MCUXpresso SDK Documentation

Release 25.12.00

NXP
Dec 18, 2025

Table of contents

This documentation contains information specific to the frdmimxrt1186 board.

Chapter 1

Middleware

1.1 Boot

1.1.1 MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcuboot_opensource

Overview

This repository is a fork of MCUboot (https://github.com/mcu-tools/mcuboot) for MCUXpresso SDK delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation

Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit MCUboot - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup

Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution

Contributions are not currently accepted. If the intended contribution is not related to NXP specific code, consider contributing directly to the upstream MCUboot project. Once this MCUboot fork is synchronized with the upstream project, such contributions will end up here as well. If the intended contribution is a bugfix or improvement for NXP porting layer or for code added or modified by NXP, please open an issue or contact NXP support.

NXP Fork

This fork of MCUboot contains specific modifications and enhancements for NXP MCUXpresso SDK integration.

See *changelog* for details.

1.1.2 MCUboot

Sim passing Mynewt failing Espressif passing imgtool passing License: Apache 2.0

This is MCUboot version 2.2.0

MCUboot is a secure bootloader for 32-bits microcontrollers. It defines a common infrastructure for the bootloader and the system flash layout on microcontroller systems, and provides a secure bootloader that enables easy software upgrade.

MCUboot is not dependent on any specific operating system and hardware and relies on hardware porting layers from the operating system it works with. Currently, MCUboot works with the following operating systems and SoCs:

- Zephyr
- Apache Mynewt
- Apache NuttX
- RIOT
- Mbed OS
- Espressif
- Cypress/Infineon

RIOT is supported only as a boot target. We will accept any new port contributed by the community once it is good enough.

MCUboot How-tos

See the following pages for instructions on using MCUboot with different operating systems and SoCs:

- Zephyr
- Apache Mynewt
- Apache NuttX
- RIOT
- Mbed OS
- Espressif
- *Cypress/Infineon*

There are also instructions for the *Simulator*.

Roadmap

The issues being planned and worked on are tracked using GitHub issues. To give your input, visit MCUboot GitHub Issues.

Source files

You can find additional documentation on the bootloader in the source files. For more information, use the following links:

- boot/bootutil - The core of the bootloader itself.
- boot/boot_serial - Support for serial upgrade within the bootloader itself.
- boot/zephyr - Port of the bootloader to Zephyr.
- boot/mynewt - Bootloader application for Apache Mynewt.
- boot/nuttx - Bootloader application and port of MCUboot interfaces for Apache NuttX.
- boot/mbed - Port of the bootloader to Mbed OS.
- boot/espressif - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Espressif SoCs.
- boot/cypress - Bootloader application and MCUboot port for Cypress/Infineon SoCs.
- imgtool - A tool to securely sign firmware images for booting by MCUboot.
- sim - A bootloader simulator for testing and regression.

Joining the project

Developers are welcome!

Use the following links to join or see more about the project:

- Our developer mailing list
- Our Discord channel Get your invite

1.2 Connectivity

1.2.1 lwIP

This is the NXP fork of the lwIP networking stack.

- For details about changes and additions made by NXP, see CHANGELOG.
- For details about the NXP porting layer, see *The NXP lwIP Port*.
- For usage and API of lwIP, use official documentation at http://www.nongnu.org/lwip/.

The NXP lwIP Port

Below is description of possible settings of the port layer and an overview of a few helper functions.

The best place for redefinition of any mentioned macro is lwipopts.h.

The declaration of every mentioned function is in ethernetif.h. Please check the doxygen comments of those functions before.

Link state Physical link state (up/down) and its speed and duplex must be read out from PHY over MDIO bus. Especially link information is useful for lwIP stack so it can for example send DHCP discovery immediately when a link becomes up.

To simplify this port layer offers a function `ethernetif_probe_link()` which reads those data from PHY and forwards them into lwIP stack.

In almost all examples this function is called every `ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS` (1500ms) by a function `probe_link_cyclic()`.

By setting `ETH_LINK_POLLING_INTERVAL_MS` to 0 polling will be disabled. On FreeRTOS, `probe_link_cyclic()` will be then called on an interrupt generated by PHY. GPIO port and pin for the interrupt line must be set in the `ethernetifConfig` struct passed to `ethernetif_init()`. On bare metal interrupts are not supported right now.

Rx task To improve the reaction time of the app, reception of packets is done in a dedicated task. The rx task stack size can be set by `ETH_RX_TASK_STACK_SIZE` macro, its priority by `ETH_RX_TASK_PRIO`.

If you want to save memory you can set reception to be done in an interrupt by setting `ETH_DO_RX_IN_SEPARATE_TASK` macro to 0.

Disabling Rx interrupt when out of buffers If `ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS` is set to 1, then when the port gets out of Rx buffers, Rx enet interrupt will be disabled for a particular controller. Everytime Rx buffer is freed, Rx interrupt will be enabled.

This prevents your app from never getting out of Rx interrupt when the network is flooded with traffic.

`ETH_DISABLE_RX_INT_WHEN_OUT_OF_BUFFERS` is by default turned on, on FreeRTOS and off on bare metal.

Limit the number of packets read out from the driver at once on bare metal. You may define macro `ETH_MAX_RX_PKTS_AT_ONCE` to limit the number of received packets read out from the driver at once.

In case of heavy Rx traffic, lowering this number improves the realtime behaviour of an app. Increasing improves Rx throughput.

Setting it to value < 1 or not defining means "no limit".

Helper functions If your application needs to wait for the link to become up you can use one of the following functions:

- `ethernetif_wait_linkup()`- Blocks until the link on the passed netif is not up.
- `ethernetif_wait_linkup_array()` - Blocks until the link on at least one netif from the passed list of netifs becomes up.

If your app needs to wait for the IPv4 address on a particular netif to become different than "ANY" address (255.255.255.255) function `ethernetif_wait_ipv4_valid()` does this.

1.3 File System

1.3.1 FatFs

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-fatfs

Overview This repository is for FatFs middleware delivery and it contains the components officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository (mcuxsdk-manifests) for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit FatFs - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution Contributions are not currently accepted. Guidelines to contribute will be posted in the future.

Repo Specific Content This is MCUXpresso SDK fork of FatFs (FAT file system created by ChaN). Official documentation is available at http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/

MCUXpresso version is extending original content by following hardware specific porting layers:

- mmc_disk
- nand_disk
- ram_disk
- sd_disk
- sdspi_disk
- usb_disk

Changelog FatFs

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog

[R0.15_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.15
- Applied patches from http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html

[R0.14b_rev1]

- Applied patches from http://elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/patches.html

[R0.14b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14b

[R0.14a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14a
- Applied patch ff14a_p1.diff and ff14a_p2.diff

[R0.14_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.14
- Applied patch ff14_p1.diff and ff14_p2.diff

[R0.13c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13c
- Applied patches ff_13c_p1.diff,ff_13c_p2.diff, ff_13c_p3.diff and ff_13c_p4.diff.

[R0.13b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13b

[R0.13a_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.13a. Added patch ff_13a_p1.diff.

[R0.12c_rev1]

- Add NAND disk support.

[R0.12c_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12c and applied patches ff_12c_p1.diff and ff_12c_p2.diff.

[R0.12b_rev0]

- Upgraded to version 0.12b.

[R0.11a]

- Added glue functions for low-level drivers (SDHC, SDSPI, RAM, MMC). Modified diskio.c.
- Added RTOS wrappers to make FatFs thread safe. Modified syscall.c.
- Renamed ffconf.h to ffconf_template.h. Each application should contain its own ffconf.h.
- Included ffconf.h into diskio.c to enable the selection of physical disk from ffconf.h by macro definition.
- Conditional compilation of physical disk interfaces in diskio.c.

1.4 Motor Control

1.4.1 FreeMASTER

Communication Driver User Guide

Introduction

What is FreeMASTER? FreeMASTER is a PC-based application developed by NXP for NXP customers. It is a versatile tool usable as a real-time monitor, visualization tool, and a graphical control panel of embedded applications based on the NXP processing units.

This document describes the embedded-side software driver which implements an interface between the application and the host PC. The interface covers the following communication:

- **Serial** UART communication either over plain RS232 interface or more typically over a USB-to-Serial either external or built in a debugger probe.
- **USB** direct connection to target microcontroller
- **CAN bus**
- **TCP/IP network** wired or WiFi
- **Segger J-Link RTT**
- **JTAG** debug port communication
- …and all of the above also using a **Zephyr** generic drivers.

The driver also supports so-called "packet-driven BDM" interface which enables a protocol-based communication over a debugging port. The BDM stands for Background Debugging Module and its physical implementation is different on each platform. Some platforms leverage a semi-standard JTAG interface, other platforms provide a custom implementation called BDM. Regardless of the name, this debugging interface enables non-intrusive access to the memory space while the target CPU is running. For basic memory read and write operations, there is no communication driver required on the target when communicating with the host PC. Use this driver to get more advanced FreeMASTER protocol features over the BDM interface. The driver must be configured for the packet-driven BDM mode, in which the host PC uses the debugging interface to write serial command frames directly to the target memory buffer. The same method is then used to read response frames from that memory buffer.

Similar to "packet-driven BDM", the FreeMASTER also supports a communication over [J-Link RTT]((https://www.segger.com/products/debug-probes/j-link/technology/about-real-time-transfer/) interface defined by SEGGER Microcontroller GmbH for ARM CortexM-based microcontrollers. This method also uses JTAG physical interface and enables high-speed real time communication to run over the same channel as used for application debugging.

Driver version 3 This document describes version 3 of the FreeMASTER Communication Driver. This version features the implementation of the new Serial Protocol, which significantly extends the features and security of its predecessor. The new protocol internal number is v4 and its specification is available in the documentation accompanying the driver code.

Driver V3 is deployed to modern 32-bit MCU platforms first, so the portfolio of supported platforms is smaller than for the previous V2 versions. It is recommended to keep using the V2 driver for legacy platforms, such as S08, S12, ColdFire, or Power Architecture. Reach out to FreeMASTER community or to the local NXP representative with requests for more information or to port the V3 driver to legacy MCU devices.

Thanks to a layered approach, the new driver simplifies the porting of the driver to new UART, CAN or networking communication interfaces significantly. Users are encouraged to port the driver to more NXP MCU platforms and contribute the code back to NXP for integration into future releases. Existing code and low-level driver layers may be used as an example when porting to new targets.

Note: Using the FreeMASTER tool and FreeMASTER Communication Driver is only allowed in systems based on NXP microcontroller or microprocessor unit. Use with non-NXP MCU platforms is **not permitted** by the license terms.

Target platforms The driver implementation uses the following abstraction mechanisms which simplify driver porting and supporting new communication modules:

- **General CPU Platform** (see source code in the src/platforms directory). The code in this layer is only specific to native data type sizes and CPU architectures (for example; alignment-aware memory copy routines). This driver version brings two generic implementations of 32-bit platforms supporting both little-endian and big-endian architectures. There are also implementations customized for the 56F800E family of digital signal controllers and S12Z MCUs. **Zephyr** is treated as a specific CPU platform as it brings unified user configuration (Kconfig) and generic hardware device drivers. With Zephyr, the transport layer and low-level communication layers described below are configured automatically using Kconfig and Device Tree technologies.
- **Transport Communication Layer** - The Serial, CAN, Networking, PD-BDM, and other methods of transport logic are implemented as a driver layer called FMSTR_TRANSPORT with a uniform API. A support of the Network transport also extends single-client modes of operation which are native for Serial, USB and CAN by a concept of multiple client sessions.
- **Low-level Communication Driver** - Each type of transport further defines a low-level API used to access the physical communication module. For example, the Serial transport defines a character-oriented API implemented by different serial communication modules like UART, LPUART, USART, and also USB-CDC. Similarly, the CAN transport defines a message-oriented API implemented by the FlexCAN or MCAN modules. Moreover, there are multiple different implementations for the same kind of communication peripherals. The difference between the implementation is in the way the low-level hardware registers are accessed. The *mcuxsdk* folder contains implementations which use MCUXpresso SDK drivers. These drivers should be used in applications based on the NXP MCUXpresso SDK. The "ampsdk" drivers target automotive-specific MCUs and their respective SDKs. The "dreg" implementations use a plain C-language access to hardware register addresses which makes it a universal and the most portable solution. In this case, users are encouraged to add more drivers for other communication modules or other respective SDKs and contribute the code back to NXP for integration.

  The low-level drivers defined for the Networking transport enable datagram-oriented UDP and stream TCP communication. This implementation is demonstrated using the lwIP software stack but shall be portable to other TCP/IP stacks. It may sound surprisingly, but also the Segger J-Link RTT communication driver is linked to the Networking transport (RTT is stream oriented communication handled similarly to TCP).

Replacing existing drivers For all supported platforms, the driver described in this document replaces the V2 implementation and also older driver implementations that were available separately for individual platforms (PC Master SCI drivers).

Clocks, pins, and peripheral initialization The FreeMASTER communication driver is only responsible for runtime processing of the communication and must be integrated with an user application code to function properly. The user application code is responsible for general initialization of clock sources, pin multiplexers, and peripheral registers related to the communication speed. Such initialization should be done before calling the FMSTR_Init function.

It is recommended to develop the user application using one of the Software Development Kits (SDKs) available from third parties or directly from NXP, such as MCUXpresso SDK, MCUXpresso IDE, and related tools. This approach simplifies the general configuration process significantly.

MCUXpresso SDK The MCUXpresso SDK is a software package provided by NXP which contains the device initialization code, linker files, and software drivers with example applications for the NXP family of MCUs. The MCUXpresso Config Tools may be used to generate the clock-setup and pin-multiplexer setup code suitable for the selected processor.

The MCUXpresso SDK also contains this FreeMASTER communication driver as a "middleware" component which may be downloaded along with the example applications from https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en/welcome.

MCUXpresso SDK on GitHub The FreeMASTER communication driver is also released as one of the middleware components of the MCUXpresso SDK on the GitHub. This release enables direct integration of the FreeMASTER source code Git repository into a target applications including Zephyr applications.

Related links:

- The official FreeMASTER middleware repository.
- Online version of this document

FreeMASTER in Zephyr The FreeMASTER middleware repository can be used with MCUXpresso SDK as well as a Zephyr module. Zephyr-specific samples which include examples of Kconfig and Device Tree configurations for Serial, USB and Network communications are available in separate repository. West manifest in this sample repository fetches the full Zephyr package including the FreeMASTER middleware repository used as a Zephyr module.

Example applications

MCUX SDK Example applications There are several example applications available for each supported MCU platform.

- **fmstr_uart** demonstrates a plain serial transmission, typically connecting to a computer's physical or virtual COM port. The typical transmission speed is 115200 bps.
- **fmstr_can** demonstrates CAN bus communication. This requires a suitable CAN interface connected to the computer and interconnected with the target MCU using a properly terminated CAN bus. The typical transmission speed is 500 kbps. A FreeMASTER-over-CAN communication plug-in must be used.
- **fmstr_usb_cdc** uses an on-chip USB controller to implement a CDC communication class. It is connected directly to a computer's USB port and creates a virtual COM port device. The typical transmission speed is above 1 Mbps.
- **fmstr_net** demonstrates the Network communication over UDP or TCP protocol. Existing examples use lwIP stack to implement the communication, but in general, it shall be possible to use any other TCP/IP stack to achieve the same functionality.
- **fmstr_wifi** is the fmstr_net application modified to use a WiFi network interface instead of a wired Ethernet connection.
- **fmstr_rtt** demonstrates the communication over SEGGER J-Link RTT interface. Both fmstr_net and fmstr_rtt examples require the FreeMASTER TCP/UDP communication plug-in to be used on the PC host side.
- **fmstr_eonce** uses the real-time data unit on the JTAG EOnCE module of the 56F800E family to implement pseudo-serial communication over the JTAG port. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. This communication requires FreeMASTER JTAG/EOnCE communication plug-in.
- **fmstr_pdbdm** uses JTAG or BDM debugging interface to access the target RAM directly while the CPU is running. Note that such approach can be used with any MCU application, even without any special driver code. The computer reads from and writes into the RAM directly without CPU intervention. The Packet-Driven BDM (PD-BDM) communication uses the same memory access to exchange command and response frames. With PD-BDM,

the FreeMASTER tool is able to go beyond basic memory read/write operations and accesses also advanced features like Recorder, TSA, or Pipes. The typical transmission speed is around 10 kbps. A PD-BDM communication plug-in must be used in FreeMASTER and configured properly for the selected debugging interface. Note that this communication cannot be used while a debugging interface is used by a debugger session.

- **fmstr_any** is a special example application which demonstrates how the NXP MCUXpresso Config Tools can be used to configure pins, clocks, peripherals, interrupts, and even the FreeMASTER "middleware" driver features in a graphical and user friendly way. The user can switch between the Serial, CAN, and other ways of communication and generate the required initialization code automatically.

Zephyr sample spplications Zephyr sample applications demonstrate Kconfig and Device Tree configuration which configure the FreeMASTER middleware module for a selected communication option (Serial, CAN, Network or RTT).

Refer to *readme.md* files in each sample directory for description of configuration options required to implement FreeMASTER connectivity.

Description

This section shows how to add the FreeMASTER Communication Driver into application and how to configure the connection to the FreeMASTER visualization tool.

Features The FreeMASTER driver implements the FreeMASTER protocol V4 and provides the following features which may be accessed using the FreeMASTER visualization tool:

- Read/write access to any memory location on the target.
- Optional password protection of the read, read/write, and read/write/flash access levels.
- Atomic bit manipulation on the target memory (bit-wise write access).
- Optimal size-aligned access to memory which is also suitable to access the peripheral register space.
- Oscilloscope access—real-time access to target variables. The sample rate may be limited by the communication speed.
- Recorder— access to the fast transient recorder running on the board as a part of the FreeMASTER driver. The sample rate is only limited by the MCU CPU speed. The length of the data recorded depends on the amount of available memory.
- Multiple instances of Oscilloscopes and Recorders without the limitation of maximum number of variables.
- Application commands—high-level message delivery from the PC to the application.
- TSA tables—describing the data types, variables, files, or hyperlinks exported by the target application. The TSA newly supports also non-memory mapped resources like external EEPROM or SD Card files.
- Pipes—enabling the buffered stream-oriented data exchange for a general-purpose terminal-like communication, diagnostic data streaming, or other data exchange.

The FreeMASTER driver features:

- Full FreeMASTER protocol V4 implementation with a new V4 style of CRC used.
- Layered approach supporting Serial, CAN, Network, PD-BDM, and other transports.
- Layered low-level Serial transport driver architecture enabling to select UART, LPUART, USART, and other physical implementations of serial interfaces, including USB-CDC.

- Layered low-level CAN transport driver architecture enabling to select FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other physical implementations of the CAN interface.
- Layered low-level Networking transport enabling to select TCP, UDP or J-Link RTT communication.
- TSA support to write-protect memory regions or individual variables and to deny the access to the unsafe memory.
- The pipe callback handlers are invoked whenever new data is available for reading from the pipe.
- Two Serial Single-Wire modes of operation are enabled. The "external" mode has the RX and TX shorted on-board. The "true" single-wire mode interconnects internally when the MCU or UART modules support it.

The following sections briefly describe all FreeMASTER features implemented by the driver. See the PC-based FreeMASTER User Manual for more details on how to use the features to monitor, tune, or control an embedded application.

Board Detection The FreeMASTER protocol V4 defines the standard set of configuration values which the host PC tool reads to identify the target and to access other target resources properly. The configuration includes the following parameters:

- Version of the driver and the version of the protocol implemented.
- MTU as the Maximum size of the Transmission Unit (for example; communication buffer size).
- Application name, description, and version strings.
- Application build date and time as a string.
- Target processor byte ordering (little/big endian).
- Protection level that requires password authentication.
- Number of the Recorder and Oscilloscope instances.
- RAM Base Address for optimized memory access commands.

Memory Read This basic feature enables the host PC to read any data memory location by specifying the address and size of the required memory area. The device response frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the outgoing communication buffer. To read a device memory of any size, the host uses the information retrieved during the Board Detection and splits the large-block request to multiple partial requests.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to read the target memory (for example; uses proper read-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Memory Write Similarly to the Memory Read operation, the Memory Write feature enables to write to any RAM memory location on the target device. A single write command frame must be shorter than the MTU to fit into the target communication buffer. Larger requests must be split into smaller ones.

The driver uses size-aligned operations to write to the target memory (for example; uses proper write-word instruction when an address is aligned to 4 bytes).

Masked Memory Write To implement the write access to a single bit or a group of bits of target variables, the Masked Memory Write feature is available in the FreeMASTER protocol and it is supported by the driver using the Read-Modify-Write approach.

Be careful when writing to bit fields of volatile variables that are also modified in an application interrupt. The interrupt may be serviced in the middle of a read-modify-write operation and it may cause data corruption.

Oscilloscope The protocol and driver enables any number of variables to be read at once with a single request from the host. This feature is called Oscilloscope and the FreeMASTER tool uses it to display a real-time graph of variable values.

The driver can be configured to support any number of Oscilloscope instances and enable simultaneously running graphs to be displayed on the host computer screen.

Recorder The protocol enables the host to select target variables whose values are then periodically recorded into a dedicated on-board memory buffer. After such data sampling stops (either on a host request or by evaluating a threshold-crossing condition), the data buffer is downloaded to the host and displayed as a graph. The data sampling rate is not limited by the speed of the communication line, so it enables displaying the variable transitions in a very high resolution.

The driver can be configured to support multiple Recorder instances and enable multiple recorder graphs to be displayed on the host screen. Having multiple recorders also enables setting the recording point differently for each instance. For example; one instance may be recording data in a general timer interrupt while another instance may record at a specific control algorithm time in the PWM interrupt.

TSA With the TSA feature, data types and variables can be described directly in the application source code. Such information is later provided to the FreeMASTER tool which may use it instead of reading symbol data from the application ELF executable file.

The information is encoded as so-called TSA tables which become direct part of the application code. The TSA tables contain descriptors of variables that shall be visible to the host tool. The descriptors can describe the memory areas by specifying the address and size of the memory block or more conveniently using the C variable names directly. Different set of TSA descriptors can be used to encode information about the structure types, unions, enumerations, or arrays.

The driver also supports special types of TSA table entries to describe user resources like external EEPROM and SD Card files, memory-mapped files, virtual directories, web URL hyperlinks, and constant enumerations.

TSA Safety When the TSA is enabled in the application, the TSA Safety can be enabled and validate the memory accesses directly by the embedded-side driver. When the TSA Safety is turned on, any memory request received from the host is validated and accepted only if it belongs to a TSA-described object. The TSA entries can be declared as Read-Write or Read-Only so that the driver can actively deny the write access to the Read-Only objects.

Application commands The Application Commands are high-level messages that can be delivered from the PC Host to the embedded application for further processing. The embedded application can either poll the status, or be called back when a new Application Command arrives to be processed. After the embedded application acknowledges that the command is handled, the host receives the Result Code and reads the other return data from memory. Both the Application Commands and the Result Codes are specific to a given application and it is user's responsibility to define them. The FreeMASTER protocol and the FreeMASTER driver only implement the delivery channel and a set of API calls to enable the Application Command processing in general.

Pipes The Pipes enable buffered and stream-oriented data exchange between the PC Host and the target application. Any pipe can be written to and read from at both ends (either on the PC or the MCU). The data transmission is acknowledged using the special FreeMASTER protocol commands. It is guaranteed that the data bytes are delivered from the writer to the reader in a proper order and without losses.

Serial single-wire operation The MCU Serial Communication Driver natively supports normal dual-wire operation. Because the protocol is half-duplex only, the driver can also operate in two single-wire modes:

- "External" single-wire operation where the Receiver and Transmitter pins are shorted on the board. This mode is supported by default in the MCU driver because the Receiver and Transmitter units are enabled or disabled whenever needed. It is also easy to extend this operation for the RS485 communication.
- "True" single-wire mode which uses only a single pin and the direction switching is made by the UART module. This mode of operation must be enabled by defining the FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE configuration option.

Multi-session support With networking interface it is possible for multiple clients to access the target MCU simultaneously. Reading and writing of target memory is processed atomically so there is no risk of data corruption. The state-full resources such as Recorders or Oscilloscopes are locked to a client session upon first use and access is denied to other clients until lock is released..

Zephyr-specific

Dedicated communication task FreeMASTER communication may run isolated in a dedicated task. The task automates the FMSTR_Init and FMSTR_Poll calls together with periodic activities enabling the FreeMASTER UI to fetch information about tasks and CPU utilization. The task can be started automatically or manually, and it must be assigned a priority to be able to react on interrupts and other communication events. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this communication task.

Zephyr shell and logging over FreeMASTER pipe FreeMASTER implements a shell backend which may use FreeMASTER pipe as a I/O terminal and logging output. Refer to Zephyr FreeMASTER sample applications which all use this feature.

Automatic TSA tables TSA tables can be declared as "automatic" in Zephyr which make them automatically registered in the table list. This may be very useful when there are many TSA tables or when the tables are defined in different (often unrelated) libraries linked together. In this case user does not need to build a list of all tables manually.

Driver files The driver source files can be found in a top-level src folder, further divided into the sub-folders:

- ***src/platforms*** platform-specific folder—one folder exists for each supported processor platform (for example; 32-bit Little Endian platform). Each such folder contains a platform header file with data types and a code which implements the potentially platform-specific operations, such as aligned memory access.
- ***src/common*** folder—contains the common driver source files shared by the driver for all supported platforms. All the *.c* files must be added to the project, compiled, and linked together with the application.

- *freemaster.h* - master driver header file, which declares the common data types, macros, and prototypes of the FreeMASTER driver API functions.
- *freemaster_cfg.h.example* - this file can serve as an example of the FreeMASTER driver configuration file. Save this file into a project source code folder and rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*. The FreeMASTER driver code includes this file to get the project-specific configuration options and to optimize the compilation of the driver.
- *freemaster_defcfg.h* - defines the default values for each FreeMASTER configuration option if the option is not set in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_protocol.h* - defines the FreeMASTER protocol constants used internally by the driver.
- *freemaster_protocol.c* - implements the FreeMASTER protocol decoder and handles the basic Get Configuration Value, Memory Read, and Memory Write commands.
- *freemaster_rec.c* - handles the Recorder-specific commands and implements the Recorder sampling and triggering routines. When the Recorder is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_scope.c* - handles the Oscilloscope-specific commands. If the Oscilloscope is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_pipes.c* - implements the Pipes functionality when the Pipes feature is enabled.
- *freemaster_appcmd.c* - handles the communication commands used to deliver and execute the Application Commands within the context of the embedded application. When the Application Commands are disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file only compiles to empty API functions.
- *freemaster_tsa.c* - handles the commands specific to the TSA feature. This feature enables the FreeMASTER host tool to obtain the TSA memory descriptors declared in the embedded application. If the TSA is disabled by the FreeMASTER driver configuration file, this file compiles as void.
- *freemaster_tsa.h* - contains the declaration of the macros used to define the TSA memory descriptors. This file is indirectly included into the user application code (via *freemaster.h*).
- *freemaster_sha.c* - implements the SHA-1 hash code used in the password authentication algorithm.
- *freemaster_private.h* - contains the declarations of functions and data types used internally in the driver. It also contains the C pre-processor statements to perform the compile-time verification of the user configuration provided in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.
- *freemaster_serial.c* - implements the serial protocol logic including the CRC, FIFO queuing, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a character-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_serial.h* - defines the low-level character-oriented Serial API.
- *freemaster_can.c* - implements the CAN protocol logic including the CAN message preparation, signalling using the first data byte in the CAN frame, and other communication-related operations. This code calls the functions of the low-level communication driver indirectly via a message-oriented API exported by the specific low-level driver.
- *freemaster_can.h* - defines the low-level message-oriented CAN API.
- *freemaster_net.c* - implements the Network protocol transport logic including multiple session management code.

  - *freemaster_net.h* - definitions related to the Network transport.
  - *freemaster_pdbdm.c* - implements the packet-driven BDM communication buffer and other communication-related operations.
  - *freemaster_utils.c* - aligned memory copy routines, circular buffer management and other utility functions
  - *freemaster_utils.h* - definitions related to utility code.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/serial*** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
  - *freemaster_serial_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the UART, LPUART, USART, and other kinds of Serial communication modules.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/can*** - contains the code related to the serial communication implemented using one of the supported SDK frameworks.
  - *freemaster_XXX.c* and *.h* - implement low-level access to the communication peripheral registers. Different files exist for the FlexCAN, msCAN, MCAN, and other kinds of CAN communication modules.
- ***src/drivers/[sdk]/network*** - contains low-level code adapting the FreeMASTER Network transport to an underlying TCP/IP or RTT stack.
  - *freemaster_net_lwip_tcp.c* and *_udp.c* - default networking implementation of TCP and UDP transports using lwIP stack.
  - *freemaster_net_segger_rtt.c* - implementation of network transport using Segger J-Link RTT interface

Driver configuration The driver is configured using a single header file (*freemaster_cfg.h*). Create this file and save it together with other project source files before compiling the driver code. All FreeMASTER driver source files include the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and use the macros defined here for the conditional and parameterized compilation. The C compiler must locate the configuration file when compiling the driver files. Typically, it can be achieved by putting this file into a folder where the other project-specific included files are stored.

As a starting point to create the configuration file, get the *freemaster_cfg.h.example* file, rename it to *freemaster_cfg.h*, and save it into the project area.

Note: It is NOT recommended to leave the *freemaster_cfg.h* file in the FreeMASTER driver source code folder. The configuration file must be placed at a project-specific location, so that it does not affect the other applications that use the same driver.

Configurable items This section describes the configuration options which can be defined in *freemaster_cfg.h*.

Interrupt modes

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR    [0|1]
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR   [0|1]
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Exactly one of the three macros must be defined to non-zero. The others must be defined to zero or left undefined. The non-zero-defined constant selects the interrupt mode of the driver. See *Driver interrupt modes*.

- FMSTR_LONG_INTR — long interrupt mode
- FMSTR_SHORT_INTR — short interrupt mode
- FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN — poll-driven mode

Note: Some options may not be supported by all communication interfaces. For example, the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR option is not supported by the USB_CDC interface.

Protocol transport

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER source code. Specify one of existing instances to make use of the protocol transport.

Description Use one of the pre-defined constants, as implemented by the FreeMASTER code. The current driver supports the following transports:

- **FMSTR_SERIAL** - serial communication protocol
- **FMSTR_CAN** - using CAN communication
- **FMSTR_PDBDM** - using packet-driven BDM communication
- **FMSTR_NET** - network communication using TCP or UDP protocol

Serial transport This section describes configuration parameters used when serial transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_SERIAL
```

FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the Serial communication.

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing serial driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/serial* implementation):

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_UART** - UART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_LPUART** - LPUART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USART** - USART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_MINIUSART** - miniUSART driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_QSCI** - DSC QSCI driver
- **FMSTR_SERIAL_MCUX_USB** - USB/CDC class driver (also see code in the */support/mcuxsdk_usb* folder)

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_56F800E_EONCE** - DSC JTAG EOnCE driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as FMSTR_SERIAL_DRV. For example:

- **FMSTR_SERIAL_DREG_UART** - demonstrates the low-level interface implemented without the MCUXpresso SDK and using direct access to peripheral registers.

FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the UART, LPUART, USART, or other serial peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call FMSTR_SetSerialBaseAddress() to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_BUFFER_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type 0 or a value in range 32…255

Description Specify the size of the communication buffer to be allocated by the driver. Default value, which suits all driver features, is used when this option is defined as 0.

FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Value in range 0…255

Description Specify the size of the FIFO receiver queue used to quickly receive and store characters in the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR interrupt mode.
The default value is 32 B.

FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE

```
#define FMSTR_SERIAL_SINGLEWIRE [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Set to non-zero to enable the "True" single-wire mode which uses a single MCU pin to communicate. The low-level driver enables the pin direction switching when the MCU peripheral supports it.

CAN Bus transport This section describes configuration parameters used when CAN transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_CAN
```

FMSTR_CAN_DRV Select what low-level driver interface will be used when implementing the CAN communication.

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Driver identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing CAN driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/can implementation*):

- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_FLEXCAN** - FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MCAN** - MCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_MSCAN** - msCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCFLEXCAN** - DSC FlexCAN driver
- **FMSTR_CAN_MCUX_DSCMSCAN** - DSC msCAN driver

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom low-level driver interface structure which may be used as FMSTR_CAN_DRV.

FMSTR_CAN_BASE

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_BASE [address|symbol]
```

Value Type Optional address value (numeric or symbolic)

Description Specify the base address of the FlexCAN, msCAN, or other CAN peripheral module to be used for the communication. This value is not defined by default. User application should call FMSTR_SetCanBaseAddress() to select the peripheral module.

FMSTR_CAN_CMDID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_CMDID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for FreeMASTER commands (direction from PC Host tool to target application). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with FMSTR_CAN_EXTID bit. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_CAN_RSPID

```
#define FMSTR_CAN_RSPID [number]
```

Value Type CAN identifier (11-bit or 29-bit number)

Description CAN message identifier used for responding messages (direction from target application to PC Host tool). When declaring 29-bit identifier, combine the numeric value with FMSTR_CAN_EXTID bit. Note that both *CMDID* and *RSPID* values may be the same. Default value is 0x7AA.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_TXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame transmission. Default value is 0.

FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB

```
#define FMSTR_FLEXCAN_RXMB [number]
```

Value Type Number in range of 0..N where N is number of CAN message-buffers supported by HW module.

Description Only used when the FlexCAN low-level driver is used. Define the FlexCAN message buffer for CAN frame reception. Note that the FreeMASTER driver may also operate with a common message buffer used by both TX and RX directions. Default value is 1.

Network transport This section describes configuration parameters used when Network transport is used:

```
#define FMSTR_TRANSPORT FMSTR_NET
```

FMSTR_NET_DRV Select network interface implementation.

```
#define FMSTR_NET_DRV [identifier]
```

Value Type Identifiers are structure instance names defined in FreeMASTER drivers code. Specify one of existing NET driver instances.

Description When using MCUXpresso SDK, use one of the following constants (see */drivers/mcuxsdk/network implementation*):

- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_TCP** - TCP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_LWIP_UDP** - UDP communication using lwIP stack
- **FMSTR_NET_SEGGER_RTT** - Communication using SEGGER J-Link RTT interface

Other SDKs or BSPs may define the custom networking interface which may be used as FMSTR_CAN_DRV.

Add another row below:

FMSTR_NET_PORT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_PORT [number]
```

Value Type TCP or UDP port number (short integer)

Description Specifies the server port number used by TCP or UDP protocols.

FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT

```
#define FMSTR_NET_BLOCKING_TIMEOUT [number]
```

Value Type Timeout as number of milliseconds

Description This value specifies a timeout in milliseconds for which the network socket operations may block the execution inside *FMSTR_Poll*. This may be set high (e.g. 250) when a dedicated RTOS task is used to handle FreeMASTER protocol polling. Set to a lower value when the polling task is also responsible for other operations. Set to 0 to attempt to use non-blocking socket operations.

FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY

```
#define FMSTR_NET_AUTODISCOVERY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description This option enables the FreeMASTER driver to use a separate UDP socket to broadcast auto-discovery messages to network. This helps the FreeMASTER tool to discover the target device address, port and protocol options.

Debugging options

FMSTR_DISABLE

```
#define FMSTR_DISABLE [0|1]
```

Value Type boolean (0 or 1)

Description Define as non-zero to disable all FreeMASTER features, exclude the driver code from build, and compile all its API functions empty. This may be useful to remove FreeMASTER without modifying any application source code. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_DEBUG_TX

```
#define FMSTR_DEBUG_TX [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to enable the driver to periodically transmit test frames out on the selected communication interface (SCI or CAN). With the debug transmission enabled, it is simpler to detect problems in the baudrate or other communication configuration settings.

The test frames are transmitted until the first valid command frame is received from the PC Host tool. The test frame is a valid error status frame, as defined by the protocol format. On the serial line, the test frame consists of three printable characters (+©W) which are easy to capture using the serial terminal tools.

This feature requires the FMSTR_Poll() function to be called periodically. Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR

```
#define FMSTR_APPLICATION_STR
```

Value Type String.

Description Name of the application visible in FreeMASTER host application.

Memory access

FMSTR_USE_READMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_READMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Read command and enable FreeMASTER to have read access to memory and variables. The access can be further restricted by using a TSA feature.
Default value is 1 (true).

FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_WRITEMEM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Memory Write command.
The default value is 1 (true).

Oscilloscope options

FMSTR_USE_SCOPE

```
#define FMSTR_USE_SCOPE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Oscilloscope instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Oscilloscope feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_SCOPE_VARS [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Number of variables to be supported by each Oscilloscope instance.
Default value is 8.

Recorder options

FMSTR_USE_RECORDER

```
#define FMSTR_USE_RECORDER [number]
```

Value Type Integer number.

Description Number of Recorder instances to be supported. Set to 0 to disable the Recorder feature.
Default value is 0.

FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE [number]
```

Value Type Integer number larger than 2.

Description Defines the size of the memory buffer used by the Recorder instance #0.
Default: not defined, user shall call 'FMSTR_RecorderCreate()" API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE

```
#define FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE [time specification]
```

Value Type Number (nanoseconds time).

Description Defines the base sampling rate in nanoseconds (sampling speed) Recorder instance #0.

Use one of the following macros:

- FMSTR_REC_BASE_SECONDS(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MILLISEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_MICROSEC(x)
- FMSTR_REC_BASE_NANOSEC(x)

Default: not defined, user shall call 'FMSTR_RecorderCreate()" API function to specify this parameter in run time.

FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG

```
#define FMSTR_REC_FLOAT_TRIG [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the floating-point triggering. Be aware that floating-point triggering may grow the code size by linking the floating-point standard library.

Default value is 0 (false).

Application Commands options

FMSTR_USE_APPCMD

```
#define FMSTR_USE_APPCMD [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Define as non-zero to implement the Application Commands feature.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE

```
#define FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE [size]
```

Value Type Numeric buffer size in range 1..255

Description The size of the Application Command data buffer allocated by the driver. The buffer stores the (optional) parameters of the Application Command which waits to be processed.

FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 0..255

Description The number of different Application Commands that can be assigned a callback handler function using FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall(). Default value is 0.

TSA options

FMSTR_USE_TSA

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER TSA feature to be used. With this option enabled, the TSA tables defined in the applications are made available to the FreeMASTER host tool.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_SAFETY [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the memory access validation in the FreeMASTER driver. With this option, the host tool is not able to access the memory which is not described by at least one TSA descriptor. Also a write access is denied for objects defined as read-only in TSA tables.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_INROM [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Declare all TSA descriptors as *const*, which enables the linker to put the data into the flash memory. The actual result depends on linker settings or the linker commands used in the project.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC

```
#define FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable runtime-defined TSA entries to be added to the TSA table by the FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff() and FMSTR_TsaAddVar() functions.
Default value is 0 (false).

Pipes options

FMSTR_USE_PIPES

```
#define FMSTR_USE_PIPES [0|1]
```

Value Type Boolean 0 or 1.

Description Enable the FreeMASTER Pipes feature to be used.
Default value is 0 (false).

FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT

```
#define FMSTR_MAX_PIPES_COUNT [number]
```

Value Type Number in range 1..63.

Description The number of simultaneous pipe connections to support.
The default value is 1.

Driver interrupt modes To implement the communication, the FreeMASTER driver handles the Serial or CAN module's receive and transmit requests. Use the *freemaster_cfg.h* configuration file to select whether the driver processes the communication automatically in the interrupt service routine handler or if it only polls the status of the module (typically during the application idle time).

This section describes each of the interrupt mode in more details.

Completely Interrupt-Driven operation Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_LONG_INTR 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding is done in the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine. Because the protocol execution may be a lengthy task (especially with the TSA-Safety enabled) it is recommended to use this mode only if the interrupt prioritization scheme is possible in the application and the FreeMASTER interrupt is assigned to a lower (the lowest) priority.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the FMSTR_SerialIsr or FMSTR_CanIsr functions from that handler.

Mixed Interrupt and Polling Modes Activated using:

```
#define FMSTR_SHORT_INTR 1
```

In this mode, the communication processing time is split between the interrupt routine and the main application loop or task. The raw communication is handled by the *FMSTR_SerialIsr, FMSTR_CanIsr*, or other interrupt service routine, while the protocol decoding and execution is handled by the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. Call *FMSTR_Poll* during the idle time in the application main loop.

The interrupt processing in this mode is relatively fast and deterministic. Upon a serial-receive event, the received character is only placed into a FIFO-like queue and it is not further processed. Upon a CAN receive event, the received frame is stored into a receive buffer. When transmitting, the characters are fetched from the prepared transmit buffer.

In this mode, the application code must register its own interrupt handler for all interrupt vectors related to the selected communication interface and call the *FMSTR_SerialIsr* or *FMSTR_CanIsr* functions from that handler.

When the serial interface is used as the serial communication interface, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called at least once per *N* character time periods. *N* is the length of the FreeMASTER FIFO queue (*FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE*) and the character time is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Completely Poll-driven

```
#define FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN 1
```

In this mode, both the communication and the FreeMASTER protocol decoding are done in the *FMSTR_Poll* routine. No interrupts are needed and the *FMSTR_SerialIsr*, *FMSTR_CanIsr*, and similar handlers compile to an empty code.

When using this mode, ensure that the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called by the application at least once per the serial "character time" which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single character.

In the latter two modes (*FMSTR_SHORT_INTR* and *FMSTR_POLL_DRIVEN*), the protocol handling takes place in the FMSTR_Poll routine. An application interrupt can occur in the middle of the Read Memory or Write Memory commands' execution and corrupt the variable being accessed by the FreeMASTER driver. In these two modes, some issues or glitches may occur when using FreeMASTER to visualize or monitor volatile variables modified in interrupt servicing code.

The same issue may appear even in the full interrupt mode (FMSTR_LONG_INTR), if volatile variables are modified in the interrupt code with a priority higher than the priority of the communication interrupt.

Data types Simple portability was one of the main requirements when writing the FreeMASTER driver. This is why the driver code uses the privately-declared data types and the vast majority of the platform-dependent code is separated in the platform-dependent source files. The data types used in the driver API are all defined in the platform-specific header file.

To prevent name conflicts with the symbols used in the application, all data types, macros, and functions have the FMSTR_ prefix. The only global variables used in the driver are the transport and low-level API structures exported from the driver-implementation layer to upper layers. Other than that, all private variables are declared as static and named using the fmstr_ prefix.

Communication interface initialization The FreeMASTER driver does not perform neither the initialization nor the configuration of the peripheral module that it uses to communicate. It is the application startup code responsibility to configure the communication module before the FreeMASTER driver is initialized by the FMSTR_Init call.

When the Serial communication module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the UART receive and transmit pins, the serial communication baud rate, parity (no-parity), the character length (eight bits), and the number of stop bits (one) before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see *Driver interrupt modes*), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected serial peripheral module. Call the FMSTR_SerialIsr function from the application handler.

When a CAN module is used as the FreeMASTER communication interface, configure the CAN receive and transmit pins and the CAN module bit rate before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. For either the long or the short interrupt modes of the driver (see *Driver interrupt modes*), configure the interrupt controller and register an application-specific interrupt handler for all interrupt sources related to the selected CAN peripheral module. Call the FMSTR_CanIsr function from the application handler.

Note: It is not necessary to enable or unmask the serial nor the CAN interrupts before initializing the FreeMASTER driver. The driver enables or disables the interrupts and communication lines, as required during runtime.

FreeMASTER Recorder calls When using the FreeMASTER Recorder in the application (FMSTR_USE_RECORDER > 0), call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate function early after FMSTR_Init to set up each recorder instance to be used in the application. Then call the FMSTR_Recorder function periodically in the code where the data recording should occur. A typical place to call the Recorder routine is at the timer or PWM interrupts, but it can be anywhere else. The example applications provided together with the driver code call the FMSTR_Recorder in the main application loop.

In applications where FMSTR_Recorder is called periodically with a constant period, specify the period in the Recorder configuration structure before calling FMSTR_RecorderCreate. This setting enables the PC Host FreeMASTER tool to display the X-axis of the Recorder graph properly scaled for the time domain.

Driver usage Start using or evaluating FreeMASTER by opening some of the example applications available in the driver setup package.

Follow these steps to enable the basic FreeMASTER connectivity in the application:

- Make sure that all **.c* files of the FreeMASTER driver from the *src/common/platforms/[your_platform]* folder are a part of the project. See *Driver files* for more details.
- Configure the FreeMASTER driver by creating or editing the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and by saving it into the application project directory. See *Driver configuration* for more details.
- Include the *freemaster.h* file into any application source file that makes the FreeMASTER API calls.
- Initialize the Serial or CAN modules. Set the baud rate, parity, and other parameters of the communication. Do not enable the communication interrupts in the interrupt mask registers.
- For the FMSTR_LONG_INTR and FMSTR_SHORT_INTR modes, install the application-specific interrupt routine and call the FMSTR_SerialIsr or FMSTR_CanIsr functions from this handler.
- Call the FMSTR_Init function early on in the application initialization code.
- Call the FMSTR_RecorderCreate functions for each Recorder instance to enable the Recorder feature.
- In the main application loop, call the FMSTR_Poll API function periodically when the application is idle.
- For the FMSTR_SHORT_INTR and FMSTR_LONG_INTR modes, enable the interrupts globally so that the interrupts can be handled by the CPU.

Communication troubleshooting The most common problem that causes communication issues is a wrong baud rate setting or a wrong pin multiplexer setting of the target MCU. When a communication between the PC Host running FreeMASTER and the target MCU cannot be established, try enabling the FMSTR_DEBUG_TX option in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file and call the FMSTR_Poll function periodically in the main application task loop.

With this feature enabled, the FreeMASTER driver periodically transmits a test frame through the Serial or CAN lines. Use a logic analyzer or an oscilloscope to monitor the signals at the communication pins of the CPU device to examine whether the bit rate and signal polarity are configured properly.

Driver API

This section describes the driver Application Programmers' Interface (API) needed to initialize and use the FreeMASTER serial communication driver.

Control API There are three key functions to initialize and use the driver.

FMSTR_Init

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_Init(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_protocol.c*

Description This function initializes the internal variables of the FreeMASTER driver and enables the communication interface. This function does not change the configuration of the selected communication module. The hardware module must be initialized before the *FMSTR_Init* function is called.

A call to this function must occur before calling any other FreeMASTER driver API functions.

FMSTR_Poll

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Poll(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_protocol.c*

Description In the poll-driven or short interrupt modes, this function handles the protocol decoding and execution (see *Driver interrupt modes*). In the poll-driven mode, this function also handles the communication interface with the PC. Typically, the *FMSTR_Poll* function is called during the "idle" time in the main application task loop.

To prevent the receive data overflow (loss) on a serial interface, make sure that the FMSTR_Poll function is called at least once per the time calculated as:

*N * Tchar*

where:

- *N* is equal to the length of the receive FIFO queue (configured by the FMSTR_COMM_RQUEUE_SIZE macro). *N* is 1 for the poll-driven mode.
- *Tchar* is the character time, which is the time needed to transmit or receive a single byte over the SCI line.

Note: In the long interrupt mode, this function typically compiles as an empty function and can still be called. It is worthwhile to call this function regardless of the interrupt mode used in the application. This approach enables a convenient switching between the different interrupt modes only by changing the configuration macros in the *freemaster_cfg.h* file.

FMSTR_SerialIsr / FMSTR_CanIsr

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_SerialIsr(void);
void FMSTR_CanIsr(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *hw-specific low-level driver C file*

Description This function contains the interrupt-processing code of the FreeMASTER driver. In long or short interrupt modes (see *Driver interrupt modes*), this function must be called from the application interrupt service routine registered for the communication interrupt vector. On platforms where the communication module uses multiple interrupt vectors, the application should register a handler for all vectors and call this function at each interrupt.

Note: In a poll-driven mode, this function is compiled as an empty function and does not have to be used.

Recorder API

FMSTR_RecorderCreate

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RecorderCreate(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex, FMSTR_REC_BUFF* buffCfg);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function registers a recorder instance and enables it to be used by the PC Host tool. Call this function for all recorder instances from 0 to the maximum number defined by the FMSTR_USE_RECORDER configuration option (minus one). An exception to this requirement is the recorder of instance *0* which may be automatically configured by FMSTR_Init when the *freemaster_cfg.h* configuration file defines the *FMSTR_REC_BUFF_SIZE* and *FMSTR_REC_TIMEBASE* options.

For more information, see *Configurable items*.

FMSTR_Recorder

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_Recorder(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function takes a sample of the variables being recorded using the FreeMASTER Recorder instance *recIndex*. If the selected Recorder is not active when the *FMSTR_Recorder* function is being called, the function returns immediately. When the Recorder is active, the values of the variables being recorded are copied into the recorder buffer and the trigger conditions are evaluated.

If a trigger condition is satisfied, the Recorder enters the post-trigger mode, where it counts down the follow-up samples (number of *FMSTR_Recorder* function calls) and de-activates the Recorder when the required post-trigger samples are finished.

The *FMSTR_Recorder* function is typically called in the timer or PWM interrupt service routines. This function can also be called in the application main loop (for testing purposes).

FMSTR_RecorderTrigger

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_RecorderTrigger(FMSTR_INDEX recIndex);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_rec.c*

Description This function forces the Recorder trigger condition to happen, which causes the Recorder to be automatically deactivated after the post-trigger samples are sampled. Use this function in the application code for programmatic control over the Recorder triggering. This can be useful when a more complex triggering conditions need to be used.

Fast Recorder API The Fast Recorder feature is not available in the FreeMASTER driver version 3. This feature was heavily dependent on the target platform and it was only available for the 56F8xxxx DSCs.

TSA Tables When the TSA is enabled in the FreeMASTER driver configuration file (by setting the FMSTR_USE_TSA macro to a non-zero value), it defines the so-called TSA tables in the application. This section describes the macros that must to be used to define the TSA tables.

There can be any number of TSA tables spread across the application source files. There must be always exactly one TSA Table List defined, which informs the FreeMASTER driver about the active TSA tables.

When there is at least one TSA table and one TSA Table List defined in the application, the TSA information automatically appears in the FreeMASTER symbols list. The symbols can then be used to create FreeMASTER variables for visualization or control.

TSA table definition The TSA table describes the static or global variables together with their address, size, type, and access-protection information. If the TSA-described variables are of a structure type, the TSA table may also describe this type and provide an access to the individual structure members of the variable.

The TSA table definition begins with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN macro with a *table_id* identifying the table. The *table_id* shall be a valid C-langiage symbol.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(table_id)
```

After this opening macro, the TSA descriptors are placed using these macros:

```
/* Adding variable descriptors */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_VAR(name, type)  /* read/write variable entry */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR(name, type)  /* read-only variable entry */

/* Description of complex data types */
FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT(struct_name) /* structure or union type entry */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER(struct_name, member_name, type)  /* structure member entry */

/* Memory blocks */
FMSTR_TSA_RW_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read/write memory block */
FMSTR_TSA_RO_MEM(name, type, address, size) /* read-only memory block */
```

The table is closed using the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()
```

TSA descriptor parameters The TSA descriptor macros accept these parameters:

- *name* — variable name. The variable must be defined before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *type* — variable or member type. Only one of the pre-defined type constants may be used (see below).
- *struct_name* — structure type name. The type must be defined (typedef) before the TSA descriptor references it.
- *member_name* — structure member name.

Note: The structure member descriptors (FMSTR_TSA_MEMBER) must immediately follow the parent structure descriptor (FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT) in the table.

Note: To write-protect the variables in the FreeMASTER driver (FMSTR_TSA_RO_VAR), enable the TSA-Safety feature in the configuration file.

TSA variable types The table lists *type* identifiers which can be used in TSA descriptors:

Constant	Description
FMSTR_TSA_UINT*n*	Unsigned integer type of size *n* bits (n=8,16,32,64)
FMSTR_TSA_SINT*n*	Signed integer type of size *n* bits (n=8,16,32,64)
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC*n*	Fractional number of size *n* bits (n=16,32,64).
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_Q(*m,n*)	Signed fractional number in general Q form (m+n+1 total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FRAC_UQ(*m,n*)	Unsigned fractional number in general UQ form (m+n total bits)
FMSTR_TSA_FLOAT	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_DOUBLE	8-byte standard IEEE floating-point type
FMSTR_TSA_POINTER	Generic pointer type defined (platform-specific 16 or 32 bit)
FMSTR_TSA_USERTYPE(*name*)	Structure or union type declared with FMSTR_TSA_STRUCT record

TSA table list There shall be exactly one TSA Table List in the application. The list contains one entry for each TSA table defined anywhere in the application.

The TSA Table List begins with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN macro and continues with the TSA table entries for each table.

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_BEGIN()

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id2)
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE(table_id3)
...
```

The list is closed with the FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END macro:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_LIST_END()
```

TSA Active Content entries FreeMASTER v2.0 and higher supports TSA Active Content, enabling the TSA tables to describe the memory-mapped files, virtual directories, and URL hyperlinks. FreeMASTER can access such objects similarly to accessing the files and folders on the local hard drive.

With this set of TSA entries, the FreeMASTER pages can be embedded directly into the target MCU flash and accessed by FreeMASTER directly over the communication line. The HTML-coded pages rendered inside the FreeMASTER window can access the TSA Active Content resources using a special URL referencing the *fmstr:* protocol.

This example provides an overview of the supported TSA Active Content entries:

```
FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_BEGIN(files_and_links)

/* Directory entry applies to all subsequent MEMFILE entries */
FMSTR_TSA_DIRECTORY("/text_files")      /* entering a new virtual directory */

/* The readme.txt file will be accessible at the fmstr://text_files/readme.txt URL */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("readme.txt", readme_txt, sizeof(readme_txt)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Files can also be specified with a full path so the DIRECTORY entry does not apply */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/index.htm", index, sizeof(index))          /* memory-mapped file */
FMSTR_TSA_MEMFILE("/prj/demo.pmp", demo_pmp, sizeof(demo_pmp)) /* memory-mapped file */

/* Hyperlinks can point to a local MEMFILE object or to the Internet */
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("Board's Built-in Welcome Page", "/index.htm")
FMSTR_TSA_HREF("FreeMASTER Home Page", "http://www.nxp.com/freemaster")
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
/* Project file links simplify opening the projects from any URLs */
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Demonstration Project (embedded)", "/prj/demo.pmp")
FMSTR_TSA_PROJECT("Full Project (online)", "http://mycompany.com/prj/demo.pmp")

FMSTR_TSA_TABLE_END()
```

TSA API

FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff(FMSTR_ADDR buffAddr, FMSTR_SIZE buffSize);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *buffAddr* [in] - address of the memory buffer for the dynamic TSA table
- *buffSize* [in] - size of the memory buffer which determines the maximum number of TSA entries to be added in the runtime

Description This function must be used to assign the RAM memory buffer to the TSA subsystem when FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC is enabled. The memory buffer is then used to store the TSA entries added dynamically to the runtime TSA table using the FMSTR_TsaAddVar function call. The runtime TSA table is processed by the FreeMASTER PC Host tool along with all static tables as soon as the communication port is open.

The size of the memory buffer determines the number of TSA entries that can be added dynamically. Depending on the MCU platform, one TSA entry takes either 8 or 16 bytes.

FMSTR_TsaAddVar

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_TsaAddVar(FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR tsaName, FMSTR_TSATBL_STRPTR␣
↪tsaType,
        FMSTR_TSATBL_VOIDPTR varAddr, FMSTR_SIZE32 varSize,
        FMSTR_SIZE flags);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_tsa.c*

Arguments

- *tsaName* [in] - name of the object
- *tsaType* [in] - name of the object type
- *varAddr* [in] - address of the object

- *varSize* [in] - size of the object
- *flags* [in] - access flags; a combination of these values:
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RO_VAR* — read-only memory-mapped object (typically a variable)
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_RW_VAR* — read/write memory-mapped object
  - *FMSTR_TSA_INFO_NON_VAR* — other entry, describing structure types, structure members, enumerations, and other types

Description This function can be called only when the dynamic TSA table is enabled by the FMSTR_USE_TSA_DYNAMIC configuration option and when the FMSTR_SetUpTsaBuff function call is made to assign the dynamic TSA table memory. This function adds an entry into the dynamic TSA table. It can be used to register a read-only or read/write memory object or describe an item of the user-defined type.

See *TSA table definition* for more details about the TSA table entries.

Application Commands API

FMSTR_GetAppCmd

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE FMSTR_GetAppCmd(void);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Description This function can be used to detect if there is an Application Command waiting to be processed by the application. If no command is pending, this function returns the FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD constant. Otherwise, this function returns the code of the Application Command that must be processed. Use the FMSTR_AppCmdAck call to acknowledge the Application Command after it is processed and to return the appropriate result code to the host.

The FMSTR_GetAppCmd function does not report the commands for which a callback handler function exists. If the FMSTR_GetAppCmd function is called when a callback-registered command is pending (and before it is actually processed by the callback function), this function returns FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD.

FMSTR_GetAppCmdData

Prototype

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA FMSTR_GetAppCmdData(FMSTR_SIZE* dataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *dataLen* [out] - pointer to the variable that receives the length of the data available in the buffer. It can be NULL when this information is not needed.

Description This function can be used to retrieve the Application Command data when the application determines that an Application Command is pending (see *FMSTR_GetAppCmd*).

There is just a single buffer to hold the Application Command data (the buffer length is FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE bytes). If the data are to be used in the application after the command is processed by the FMSTR_AppCmdAck call, copy the data out to a private buffer.

FMSTR_AppCmdAck

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdAck(FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT resultCode);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultCode* [in] - the result code which is to be returned to FreeMASTER

Description This function is used when the Application Command processing finishes in the application. The resultCode passed to this function is returned back to the host and the driver is re-initialized to expect the next Application Command.

After this function is called and before the next Application Command arrives, the return value of the FMSTR_GetAppCmd function is FMSTR_APPCMDRESULT_NOCMD.

FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData(FMSTR_ADDR resultDataAddr, FMSTR_SIZE resultDataLen);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *resultDataAddr* [in] - pointer to the data buffer that is to be copied to the Application Command data buffer
- *resultDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be copied. It must not exceed the FMSTR_APPCMD_BUFF_SIZE value.

Description This function can be used before the Application Command processing finishes, when there are data to be returned back to the PC.

The response data buffer is copied into the Application Command data buffer, from where it is accessed when the host requires it. Do not use FMSTR_GetAppCmdData and the data buffer after FMSTR_AppCmdSetResponseData is called.

Note: The current version of FreeMASTER does not support the Application Command response data.

FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall

Prototype

```
FMSTR_BOOL FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE appCmdCode, FMSTR_
↪PAPPCMDFUNC callbackFunc);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_appcmd.c*

Arguments

- *appCmdCode* [in] - the Application Command code for which the callback is to be registered
- *callbackFunc* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is to be registered. Use NULL to unregister a callback registered previously with this Application Command.

Return value This function returns a non-zero value when the callback function was successfully registered or unregistered. It can return zero when trying to register a callback function for more than FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS different Application Commands.

Description This function can be used to register the given function as a callback handler for the Application Command. The Application Command is identified using single-byte code. The callback function is invoked automatically by the FreeMASTER driver when the protocol decoder obtains a request to get the application command result code.

The prototype of the callback function is

```
FMSTR_APPCMD_RESULT HandlerFunction(FMSTR_APPCMD_CODE nAppcmd,
        FMSTR_APPCMD_PDATA pData, FMSTR_SIZE nDataLen);
```

Where:

- *nAppcmd* -Application Command code
- *pData* —points to the Application Command data received (if any)
- *nDataLen* —information about the Application Command data length

The return value of the callback function is used as the Application Command Result Code and returned to FreeMASTER.

Note: The FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS configuration macro defines how many different Application Commands may be handled by a callback function. When FMSTR_MAX_APPCMD_CALLS is undefined or defined as zero, the FMSTR_RegisterAppCmdCall function always fails.

Pipes API

FMSTR_PipeOpen

Prototype

```
FMSTR_HPIPE FMSTR_PipeOpen(FMSTR_PIPE_PORT pipePort, FMSTR_PPIPEFUNC pipeCallback,
↪
        FMSTR_ADDR pipeRxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeRxSize,
        FMSTR_ADDR pipeTxBuff, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeTxSize,
        FMSTR_U8 type, const FMSTR_CHAR *name);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipePort* [in] - port number that identifies the pipe for the client
- *pipeCallback* [in] - pointer to the callback function that is called whenever a pipe data status changes
- *pipeRxBuff* [in] - address of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeRxSize* [in] - size of the receive memory buffer
- *pipeTxBuff* [in] - address of the transmit memory buffer
- *pipeTxSize* [in] - size of the transmit memory buffer
- *type* [in] - a combination of FMSTR_PIPE_MODE_xxx and FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE_xxx constants describing primary pipe data format and usage. This type helps FreeMASTER decide how to access the pipe by default. Optional, use 0 when undetermined.
- *name* [in] - user name of the pipe port. This name is visible to the FreeMASTER user when creating the graphical pipe interface.

Description This function initializes a new pipe and makes it ready to accept or send the data to the PC Host client. The receive memory buffer is used to store the received data before they are read out by the FMSTR_PipeRead call. When this buffer gets full, the PC Host client denies the data transmission into this pipe until there is enough free space again. The transmit memory buffer is used to store the data transmitted by the application to the PC Host client using the FMSTR_PipeWrite call. The transmit buffer can get full when the PC Host is disconnected or when it is slow in receiving and reading out the pipe data.

The function returns the pipe handle which must be stored and used in the subsequent calls to manage the pipe object.

The callback function (if specified) is called whenever new data are received through the pipe and available for reading. This callback is also called when the data waiting in the transmit buffer are successfully pushed to the PC Host and the transmit buffer free space increases. The prototype of the callback function provided by the user application must be as follows. The *PipeHandler* name is only a placeholder and must be defined by the application.

```
void PipeHandler(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

FMSTR_PipeClose

Prototype

```
void FMSTR_PipeClose(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call

Description This function de-initializes the pipe object. No data can be received or sent on the pipe after this call.

FMSTR_PipeWrite

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeWrite(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
        FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE writeGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data to be written
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be written
- *writeGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be written

Description This function puts the user-specified data into the pipe's transmit memory buffer and schedules it for transmission. This function returns the number of bytes that were successfully written into the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough free space in the transmit buffer.

The *writeGranularity* argument can be used to split the data into smaller chunks, each of the size given by the *writeGranularity* value. The FMSTR_PipeWrite function writes as many data chunks as possible into the transmit buffer and does not attempt to write an incomplete chunk. This feature can prove to be useful to avoid the intermediate caching when writing an array of integer values or other multi-byte data items. When making the nGranularity value equal to the nLength value, all data are considered as one chunk which is either written successfully as a whole or not at all. The nGranularity value of 0 or 1 disables the data-chunk approach.

FMSTR_PipeRead

Prototype

```
FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE FMSTR_PipeRead(FMSTR_HPIPE pipeHandle, FMSTR_ADDR pipeData,
        FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE pipeDataLen, FMSTR_PIPE_SIZE readGranularity);
```

- Declaration: *freemaster.h*
- Implementation: *freemaster_pipes.c*

Arguments

- *pipeHandle* [in] - pipe handle returned from the FMSTR_PipeOpen function call
- *pipeData* [in] - address of the data buffer to be filled with the received data
- *pipeDataLen* [in] - length of the data to be read
- *readGranularity* [in] - size of the minimum unit of data which is to be read

Description This function copies the data received from the pipe from its receive buffer to the user buffer for further processing. The function returns the number of bytes that were successfully copied to the buffer. This number may be smaller than the number of the requested bytes if there is not enough data bytes available in the receive buffer.

The readGranularity argument can be used to copy the data in larger chunks in the same way as described in the FMSTR_PipeWrite function.

API data types This section describes the data types used in the FreeMASTER driver. The information provided here can be useful when modifying or porting the FreeMASTER Communication Driver to new NXP platforms.

Note: The licensing conditions prohibit use of FreeMASTER and the FreeMASTER Communication Driver with non-NXP MPU or MCU products.

Public common types The table below describes the public data types used in the FreeMASTER driver API calls. The data types are declared in the *freemaster.h* header file.

Type name	Description
FM-STR_ADDR	Data type used to hold the memory address. On most platforms, this is normally a C-pointer, but it may also be a pure integer type.
For example, this type is defined as long integer on the 56F8xxx platform where the 24-bit addresses must be supported, but the C-pointer may be only 16 bits wide in some compiler configurations.	
FM-STR_SIZE	Data type used to hold the memory block size.
It is required that this type is unsigned and at least 16 bits wide integer.	
FM-STR_BOOL	Data type used as a general boolean type.
This type is used only in zero/non-zero conditions in the driver code.	
FM-STR_APPCM	Data type used to hold the Application Command code.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	
FM-STR_APPCM	Data type used to create the Application Command data buffer.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	
FM-STR_APPCM	Data type used to hold the Application Command result code.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit value.	

Public TSA types The table describes the TSA-specific public data types. These types are declared in the *freemaster_tsa.h* header file, which is included in the user application indirectly by the *freemaster.h* file.

FM-STR_TSA_TI	Data type used to hold a descriptor index in the TSA table or a table index in the list of TSA tables.
By default, this is defined as FM-STR_SIZE.	
FM-STR_TSA_TS	Data type used to hold a memory block size, as used in the TSA descriptors.
By default, this is defined as FM-STR_SIZE.	

Public Pipes types The table describes the data types used by the FreeMASTER Pipes API:

FM-STR_HPIPE	Pipe handle that identifies the open-pipe object.
Generally, this is a pointer to a void type.	
FM-STR_PIPE_P	Integer type required to hold at least 7 bits of data.
Generally, this is an unsigned 8-bit or 16-bit type.	
FM-STR_PIPE_SI	Integer type required to hold at least 16 bits of data.
This is used to store the data buffer sizes.	
FM-STR_PPIPEF	Pointer to the pipe handler function.
See *FM-STR_PipeOpen* for more details.	

Internal types The table describes the data types used internally by the FreeMASTER driver. The data types are declared in the platform-specific header file and they are not available in the application code.

FMSTR_U8	The smallest memory entity.
On the vast majority of platforms, this is an unsigned 8-bit integer.	
On the 56F8xx DSP platform, this is defined as an unsigned 16-bit integer.	
FMSTR_U16	Unsigned 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_U32	Unsigned 32-bit integer.
FMSTR_S8	Signed 8-bit integer.
FMSTR_S16	Signed 16-bit integer.
FMSTR_S32	Signed 32-bit integer.
FMSTR_FLOAT	4-byte standard IEEE floating-point type.
FMSTR_FLAGS	Data type forming a union with a structure of flag bit-fields.
FMSTR_SIZE8	Data type holding a general size value, at least 8 bits wide.
FMSTR_INDEX	General for-loop index. Must be signed, at least 16 bits wide.
FMSTR_BCHR	A single character in the communication buffer.
Typically, this is an 8-bit unsigned integer, except for the DSP platforms where it is a 16-bit integer.	
FMSTR_BPTR	A pointer to the communication buffer (an array of FMSTR_BCHR).

Document references

Links

- This document online: https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com/mcuxsdk/latest/html/middleware/freemaster/doc/index.html

- FreeMASTER tool home: www.nxp.com/freemaster
- FreeMASTER community area: community.nxp.com/community/freemaster
- FreeMASTER GitHub code repo: https://github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/mcux-freemaster
- MCUXpresso SDK home: www.nxp.com/mcuxpresso
- MCUXpresso SDK builder: mcuxpresso.nxp.com/en

Documents

- *FreeMASTER Usage Serial Driver Implementation* (document AN4752)
- *Integrating FreeMASTER Time Debugging Tool With CodeWarrior For Microcontrollers v10.X Project* (document AN4771)
- *Flash Driver Library For MC56F847xx And MC56F827xx DSC Family* (document AN4860)

Revision history This Table summarizes the changes done to this document since the initial release.

Revision	Date	Description
1.0	03/2006	Limited initial release
2.0	09/2007	Updated for FreeMASTER version. New Freescale document template used.
2.1	12/2007	Added description of the new Fast Recorder feature and its API.
2.2	04/2010	Added support for MPC56xx platform, Added new API for use CAN interface.
2.3	04/2011	Added support for Kxx Kinetis platform and MQX operating system.
2.4	06/2011	Serial driver update, adds support for USB CDC interface.
2.5	08/2011	Added Packet Driven BDM interface.
2.7	12/2013	Added FLEXCAN32 interface, byte access and isr callback configuration option.
2.8	06/2014	Removed obsolete license text, see the software package content for up-to-date license.
2.9	03/2015	Update for driver version 1.8.2 and 1.9: FreeMASTER Pipes, TSA Active Content, LIN Transport Layer support, DEBUG-TX communication troubleshooting, Kinetis SDK support.
3.0	08/2016	Update for driver version 2.0: Added support for MPC56xx, MPC57xx, KEAxx and S32Kxx platforms. New NXP document template as well as new license agreement used. added MCAN interface. Folders structure at the installation destination was rearranged.
4.0	04/2019	Update for driver released as part of FreeMASTER v3.0 and MCUXpresso SDK 2.6. Updated to match new V4 serial communication protocol and new configuration options. This version of the document removes substantial portion of outdated information related to S08, S12, ColdFire, Power and other legacy platforms.
4.1	04/2020	Minor update for FreeMASTER driver included in MCUXpresso SDK 2.8.
4.2	09/2020	Added example applications description and information about the MCUXpresso Config Tools. Fixed the pipe-related API description.
4.3	10/2024	Added description of Network and Segger J-Link RTT interface configuration. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 24.12.00.
4.4	04/2025	Added Zephyr-specific information. Accompanying the MCUXpresso SDK version 25.06.00.

1.5 MultiCore

1.5.1 Multicore SDK

Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

Multicore SDK (MCSDK) Release Notes

Overview These are the release notes for the NXP Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) version 25.12.00.
This software package contains components for efficient work with multicore devices as well as for the
multiprocessor communication.

What is new

- eRPC CHANGELOG
- RPMsg-Lite CHANGELOG
- MCMgr CHANGELOG
- Supported evaluation boards (multicore examples):
  - LPCXpresso55S69
  - FRDM-K32L3A6
  - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
  - MIMXRT1160-EVK
  - MIMXRT1180-EVK
  - MCX-N5XX-EVK
  - MCX-N9XX-EVK
  - FRDM-MCXN947
  - MIMXRT700-EVK
  - KW47-EVK
  - KW47-LOC
  - FRDM-MCXW72
  - MCX-W72-EVK
  - FRDM-IMXRT1186
- Supported evaluation boards (multiprocessor examples):
  - LPCXpresso55S36
  - FRDM-K22F
  - FRDM-K32L2B
  - MIMXRT685-EVK
  - MIMXRT1170-EVKB
  - MIMXRT1180
  - FRDM-MCXN236
  - FRDM-MCXC242
  - FRDM-MCXC444
  - MCX-N9XX-EVK
  - FRDM-MCXN947
  - MIMXRT700-EVK
  - FRDM-IMXRT1186

Development tools The Multicore SDK (MCSDK) was compiled and tested with development tools referred in: Development tools

Release contents This table describes the release contents. Not all MCUXpresso SDK packages contain the whole set of these components.

Deliverable	Location
Multicore SDK location <MCSDK_dir>	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/
Documentation	<MCSDK_dir>/mcuxsdk-doc/
Embedded Remote Procedure Call component	<MCSDK_dir>/erpc/
Multicore Manager component	<MCSDK_dir>/mcmgr/
RPMsg-Lite	<MCSDK_dir>/rpmsg_lite/
Multicore demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/
Multiprocessor demo applications	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/

Multicore SDK release overview Together, the Multicore SDK (MCSDK) and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for the development of software for NXP multicore devices. The MCSDK release consists of the following elementary software components for multicore:

- Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC)
- Multicore Manager (MCMGR) - included just in SDK for multicore devices
- Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite) - included just in SDK for multicore devices

The MCSDK is also accompanied with documentation and several multicore and multiprocessor demo applications.

Demo applications The multicore demo applications demonstrate the usage of the MCSDK software components on supported multicore development boards.
The following multicore demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in
the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu
- erpc_matrix_multiply_mu_rtos
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg
- erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_rtos
- erpc_two_way_rpc_rpmsg_rtos
- freertos_message_buffers
- hello_world
- multicore_manager
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_rtos
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_dsp
- rpmsg_lite_pingpong_tzm

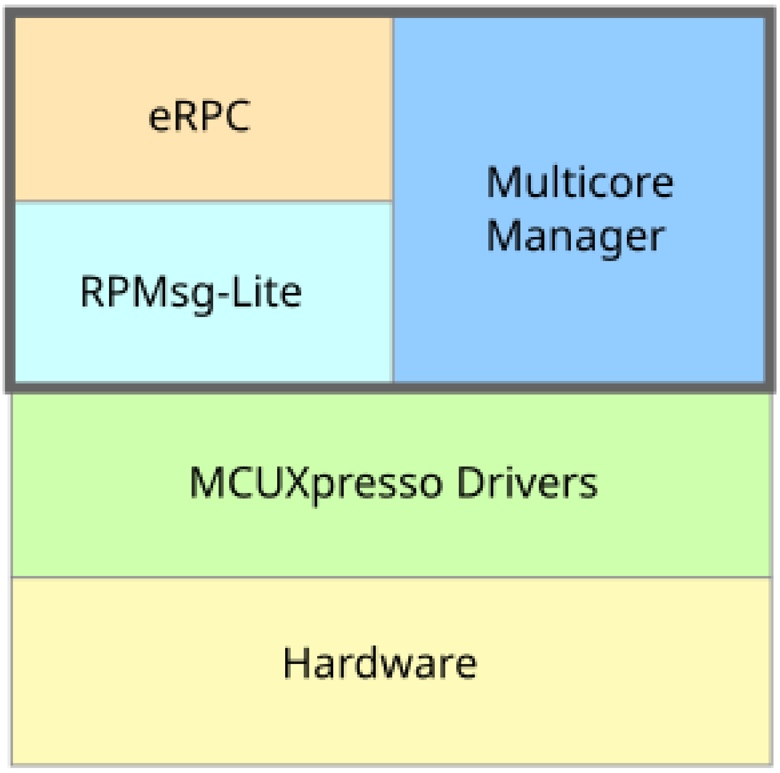
The eRPC multicore component can be leveraged for inter-processor communication and remote procedure calls between SoCs / development boards.
The following multiprocessor demo applications are located together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples in
the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples subdirectories.

- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_spi
- erpc_client_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_matrix_multiply_uart
- erpc_server_dac_adc
- erpc_remote_control

Getting Started with Multicore SDK (MCSDK)

Overview Multicore Software Development Kit (MCSDK) is a Software Development Kit that provides comprehensive software support for NXP dual/multicore devices. The MCSDK is combined with the MCUXpresso SDK to make the software framework for easy development of multicore applications.

The following figure highlights the layers and main software components of the MCSDK.

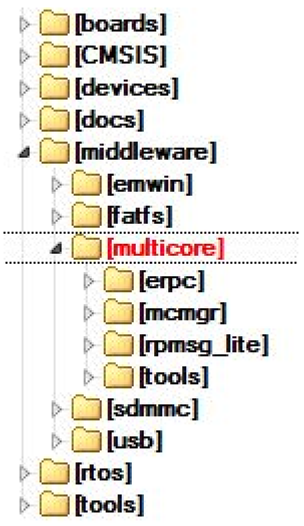


All the MCSDK-related files are located in <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore folder.

For supported toolchain versions, see the *Multicore SDK v25.12.00 Release Notes* (document MCSDKRN). For the latest version of this and other MCSDK documents, visit www.nxp.com.

Multicore SDK (MCSDK) components The MCSDK consists of the following software components:

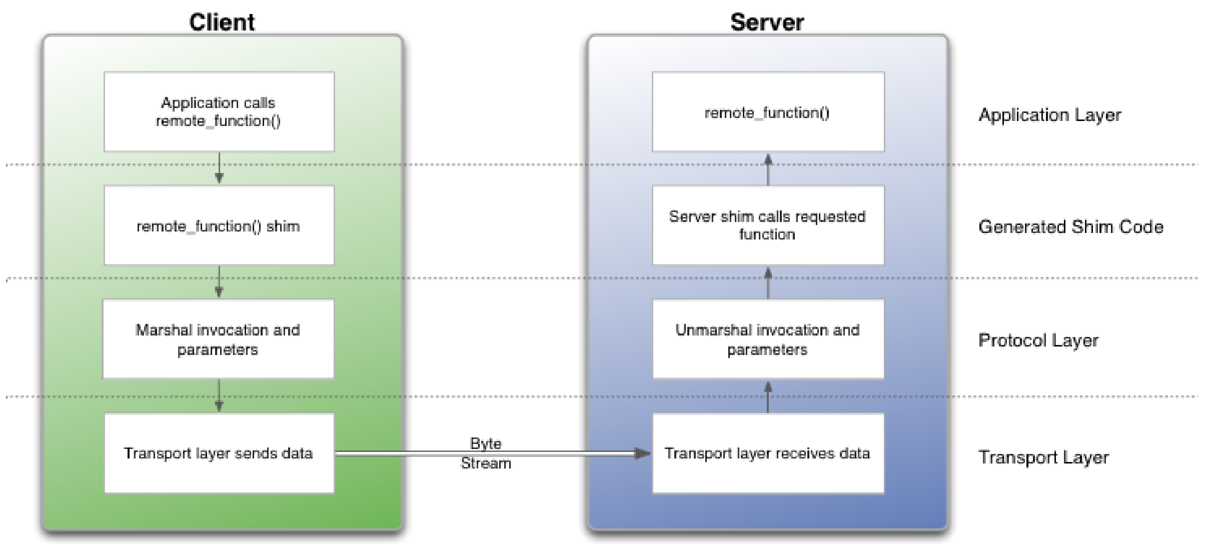
- **Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC):** This component is a combination of a library and code generator tool that implements a transparent function call interface to remote services (running on a different core).
- **Multicore Manager (MCMGR):** This library maintains information about all cores and starts up secondary/auxiliary cores.
- **Remote Processor Messaging - Lite (RPMsg-Lite):** Inter-Processor Communication library.



```
[boards]
[CMSIS]
[devices]
[docs]
[middleware]
    [emwin]
    [fatfs]
    [multicore]
        [erpc]
        [mcmgr]
        [rpmsg_lite]
        [tools]
    [sdmmc]
    [usb]
[rtos]
[tools]
```

Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) The Embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) is the RPC system created by NXP. The RPC is a mechanism used to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call.

When a remote function is called by the client, the function's parameters and an identifier for the called routine are marshaled (or serialized) into a stream of bytes. This byte stream is transported to the server through a communications channel (IPC, TPC/IP, UART, and so on). The server unmarshaled the parameters, determines which function was invoked, and calls it. If the function returns a value, it is marshaled and sent back to the client.


Client
Server
Application calls remote_function()
remote_function() shim
Marshal invocation and parameters
Transport layer sends data
Byte Stream
remote_function()
Server shim calls requested function
Unmarshal invocation and parameters
Transport layer receives data
Application Layer
Generated Shim Code
Protocol Layer
Transport Layer

RPC implementations typically use a combination of a tool (erpcgen) and IDL (interface definition language) file to generate source code to handle the details of marshaling a function's parameters and building the data stream.

Main eRPC features:

- Scalable from BareMetal to Linux OS - configurable memory and threading policies.
- Focus on embedded systems - intrinsic support for C, modular, and lightweight implementation.
- Abstracted transport interface - RPMsg is the primary transport for multicore, UART, or SPI-based solutions can be used for multichip.

The eRPC library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc folder. For detailed information about the eRPC, see the documentation available in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/doc folder.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems.

The main MCMGR features:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary cores startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

The MCMGR library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr folder. For detailed information about the MCMGR library, see the documentation available in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/doc folder.

Remote Processor Messaging Lite (RPMsg-Lite) RPMsg-Lite is a lightweight implementation of the RPMsg protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system. Compared to the legacy OpenAMP implementation, RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity.

The main RPMsg protocol features:

- Shared memory interprocessor communication.
- Virtio-based messaging bus.
- Application-defined messages sent between endpoints.

- Portable to different environments/platforms.
- Available in upstream Linux OS.

The RPMsg-Lite library is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg-lite folder. For detailed information about the RPMsg-Lite, see the RPMsg-Lite User's Guide located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/doc folder.

MCSDK demo applications Multicore and multiprocessor example applications are stored together with other MCUXpresso SDK examples, in the dedicated multicore subfolder.

Location	Folder
Multicore example projects	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multicore_examples/<application_name>/
Multiprocessor example projects	<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/examples/multiprocessor_examples/<application_name>/

See the *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) and *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK for XXX Derivatives* documents for more information about the MCUXpresso SDK example folder structure and the location of individual files that form the example application projects. These documents also contain information about building, running, and debugging multicore demo applications in individual supported IDEs. Each example application also contains a readme file that describes the operation of the example and required setup steps.

Inter-Processor Communication (IPC) levels The MCSDK provides several mechanisms for Inter-Processor Communication (IPC). Particular ways and levels of IPC are described in this chapter.

IPC using low-level drivers

The NXP multicore SoCs are equipped with peripheral modules dedicated for data exchange between individual cores. They deal with the Mailbox peripheral for LPC parts and the Messaging Unit (MU) peripheral for Kinetis and i.MX parts. The common attribute of both modules is the ability to provide a means of IPC, allowing multiple CPUs to share resources and communicate with each other in a simple manner.

The most lightweight method of IPC uses the MCUXpresso SDK low-level drivers for these peripherals. Using the Mailbox/MU driver API functions, it is possible to pass a value from core to core via the dedicated registers (could be a scalar or a pointer to shared memory) and also to trigger inter-core interrupts for notifications.

For details about individual driver API functions, see the MCUXpresso SDK API Reference Manual of the specific multicore device. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied with the RPMsg-Lite documentation that shows how to use this API in multicore applications.

Messaging mechanism

On top of Mailbox/MU drivers, a messaging system can be implemented, allowing messages to send between multiple endpoints created on each of the CPUs. The RPMsg-Lite library of the MCSDK provides this ability and serves as the preferred MCUXpresso SDK messaging library. It implements ring buffers in shared memory for messages exchange without the need of a locking mechanism.

The RPMsg-Lite provides the abstraction layer and can be easily ported to different multicore platforms and environments (Operating Systems). The advantages of such a messaging system are ease of use (there is no need to study behavior of the used underlying hardware) and smooth application code portability between platforms due to unified messaging API.

However, this costs several kB of code and data memory. The MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the RPMsg-Lite documentation and several multicore examples. You can also obtain the latest RPMsg-Lite code from the GitHub account github.com/nxp-mcuxpresso/rpmsg-lite.

Remote procedure calls

To facilitate the IPC even more and to allow the remote functions invocation, the remote procedure call mechanism can be implemented. The eRPC of the MCSDK serves for these purposes and allows the ability to invoke a software routine on a remote system via a simple local function call. Utilizing different transport layers, it is possible to communicate between individual cores of multicore SoCs (via RPMsg-Lite) or between separate processors (via SPI, UART, or TCP/IP). The eRPC is mostly applicable to the MPU parts with enough of memory resources like i.MX parts.

The eRPC library allows you to export existing C functions without having to change their prototypes (in most cases). It is accompanied by the code generator tool that generates the shim code for serialization and invocation based on the IDL file with definitions of data types and remote interfaces (API).

If the communicating peer is running as a Linux OS user-space application, the generated code can be either in C/C++ or Python.

Using the eRPC simplifies the access to services implemented on individual cores. This way, the following types of applications running on dedicated cores can be easily interfaced:

- Communication stacks (USB, Thread, Bluetooth Low Energy, Zigbee)
- Sensor aggregation/fusion applications
- Encryption algorithms
- Virtual peripherals

The eRPC is publicly available from the following GitHub account: github.com/EmbeddedRPC/erpc. Also, the MCUXpresso SDK is accompanied by the eRPC code and several multicore and multiprocessor eRPC examples.

The mentioned IPC levels demonstrate the scalability of the Multicore SDK library. Based on application needs, different IPC techniques can be used. It depends on the complexity, required speed, memory resources, system design, and so on. The MCSDK brings users the possibility for quick and easy development of multicore and multiprocessor applications.

Changelog Multicore SDK

All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

[25.12.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.3.0

[25.09.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0

  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.2.1

[25.06.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.14.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.14.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v5.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.2.0

[25.03.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.7
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.4

[24.12.00]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.6
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.3

[2.16.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.13.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.13.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.2

[2.15.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.12.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.12.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.5
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.1

[2.14.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.11.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.11.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.4
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.1.0

[2.13.0_imxrt1180a0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.13.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.10.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.10.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v5.0.0

[2.12.0_imx93]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v4.0.1

[2.12.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v4.0.0

[2.11.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.2.1

[2.11.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.9.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.9.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.2.0

[2.10.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.2

[2.9.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.8.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.8.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.1

[2.8.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.4
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.4
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.1.0

[2.7.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.3
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.3
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.1.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v3.0.0

[2.6.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.2
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.2
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.3
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.2.0

[2.5.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.1
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.1
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.2
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.0.2

[2.4.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.7.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.7.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v2.0.1

[2.3.1]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.6.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.6.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v4.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.3.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.5.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.5.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v3.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.2.0

[2.2.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.4.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.4.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.1
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.1.0

[2.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.3.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.3.0

[2.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.2.0
  - eRPC generator (erpcgen) v1.2.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v2.0.0
  - RPMsg-Lite v1.0.0

[1.1.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.1.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.1.0
  - Open-AMP / RPMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev01

[1.0.0]

- Multicore SDK component versions:
  - embedded Remote Procedure Call (eRPC) v1.0.0
  - Multicore Manager (MCMgr) v1.0.0
  - Open-AMP / RPMsg based on SHA1 ID 44b5f3c0a6458f3cf80 rev00

Multicore SDK Components

RPMSG-Lite

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK RPMSG-Lite middleware delivery and it contains RPMSG-Lite component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run RPMSG-Lite examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-rpmsg-lite component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit RPMSG-Lite - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

For Further API documentation, please look at doxygen documentation

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the rpmsg-lite project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

RPMSG-Lite This documentation describes the RPMsg-Lite component, which is a lightweight implementation of the Remote Processor Messaging (RPMsg) protocol. The RPMsg protocol defines a standardized binary interface used to communicate between multiple cores in a heterogeneous multicore system.

Compared to the RPMsg implementation of the Open Asymmetric Multi Processing (OpenAMP) framework (https://github.com/OpenAMP/open-amp), the RPMsg-Lite offers a code size reduction, API simplification, and improved modularity. On smaller Cortex-M0+ based systems, it is recommended to use RPMsg-Lite.

The RPMsg-Lite is an open-source component developed by NXP Semiconductors and released under the BSD-compatible license.

For overview please read RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview.

For RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations please read RPMSG-Lite Design Considerations.

Motivation to create RPMsg-Lite There are multiple reasons why RPMsg-Lite was developed. One reason is the need for the small footprint of the RPMsg protocol-compatible communication component, another reason is the simplification of extensive API of OpenAMP RPMsg implementation.

RPMsg protocol was not documented, and its only definition was given by the Linux Kernel and legacy OpenAMP implementations. This has changed with [1] which is a standardization protocol allowing multiple different implementations to coexist and still be mutually compatible.

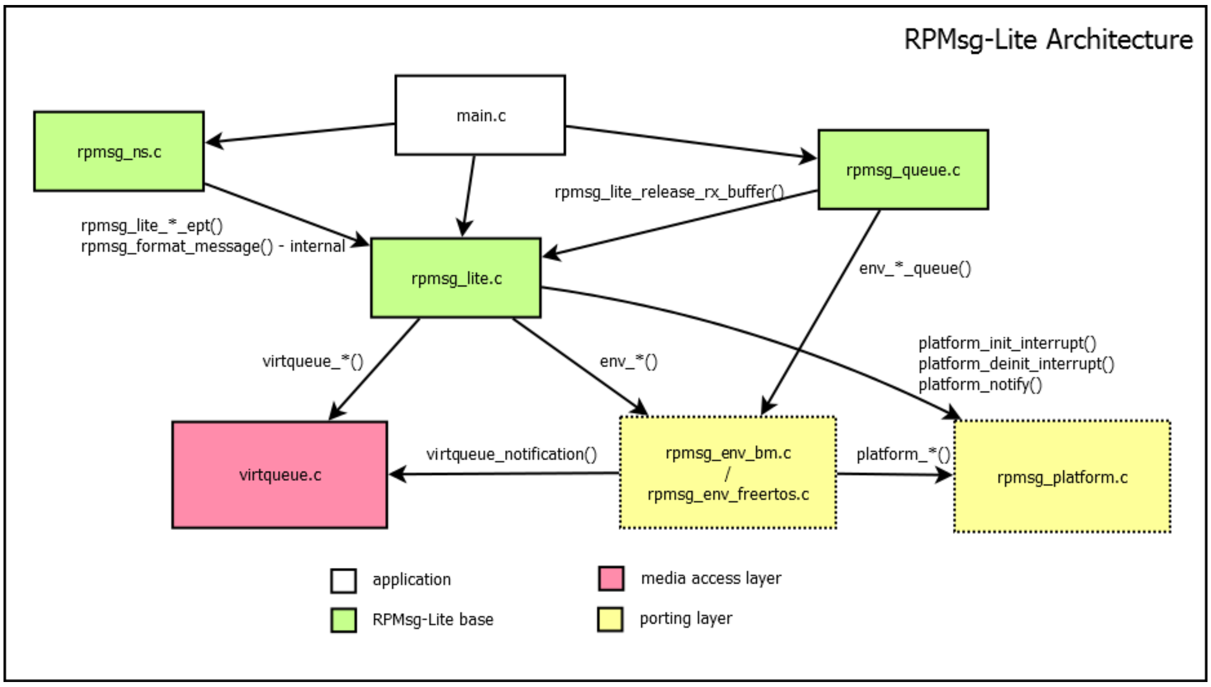
Small MCU-based systems often do not implement dynamic memory allocation. The creation of static API in RPMsg-Lite enables another reduction of resource usage. Not only does the dynamic allocation adds another 5 KB of code size, but also communication is slower and less deterministic, which is a property introduced by dynamic memory. The following table shows some rough comparison data between the OpenAMP RPMsg implementation and new RPMsg-Lite implementation:

Component / Configuration	Flash [B]	RAM [B]
OpenAMP RPMsg / Release (reference)	5547	456 + dynamic
RPMsg-Lite / Dynamic API, Release	3462	56 + dynamic
Relative Difference [%]	~62.4%	~12.3%
RPMsg-Lite / Static API (no malloc), Release	2926	352
Relative Difference [%]	~52.7%	~77.2%

Implementation The implementation of RPMsg-Lite can be divided into three subcomponents, from which two are optional. The core component is situated in rpmsg_lite.c. Two optional components are used to implement a blocking receive API (in rpmsg_queue.c) and dynamic "named" endpoint creation and deletion announcement service (in rpmsg_ns.c).

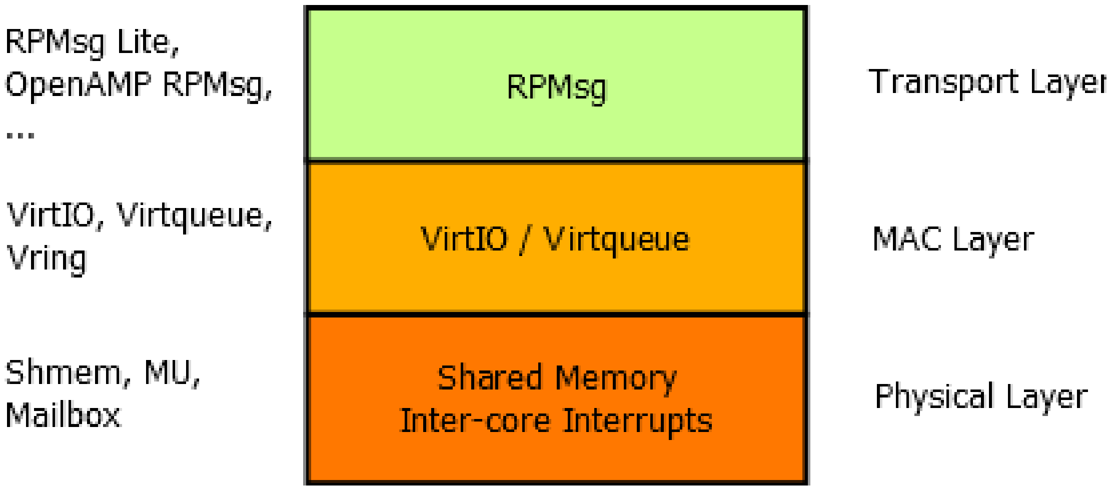
The actual "media access" layer is implemented in virtqueue.c, which is one of the few files shared with the OpenAMP implementation. This layer mainly defines the shared memory model, and internally defines used components such as vring or virtqueue.

The porting layer is split into two sub-layers: the environment layer and the platform layer. The first sublayer is to be implemented separately for each environment. (The bare metal environment already exists and is implemented in rpmsg_env_bm.c, and the FreeRTOS environment is implemented in rpmsg_env_freertos.c etc.) Only the source file, which matches the used environment, is included in the target application project. The second sublayer is implemented in rpmsg_platform.c and defines low-level functions for interrupt enabling, disabling, and triggering mainly. The situation is described in the following figure:



RPMsg-Lite core sub-component This subcomponent implements a blocking send API and callback-based receive API. The RPMsg protocol is part of the transport layer. This is realized by using so-called endpoints. Each endpoint can be assigned a different receive callback function.

However, it is important to notice that the callback is executed in an interrupt environment in current design. Therefore, certain actions like memory allocation are discouraged to execute in the callback. The following figure shows the role of RPMsg in an ISO/OSI-like layered model:



Queue sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is optional and requires implementation of the env_*_queue() functions in the environment porting layer. It uses a blocking receive API, which is common in RTOS-environments. It supports both copy and nocopy blocking receive functions.

Name Service sub-component (optional) This subcomponent is a minimum implementation of the name service which is present in the Linux Kernel implementation of RPMsg. It allows the communicating node both to send announcements about "named" endpoint (in other words, channel) creation or deletion and to receive these announcement taking any user-defined action in an application callback. The endpoint address used to receive name service announcements is arbitrarily fixed to be 53 (0x35).

Usage The application should put the /rpmsg_lite/lib/include directory to the include path and in the application, include either the rpmsg_lite.h header file, or optionally also include the rpmsg_queue.h and/or rpmsg_ns.h files. Both porting sublayers should be provided for you by NXP, but if you plan to use your own RTOS, all you need to do is to implement your own environment layer (in other words, rpmsg_env_myrtos.c) and to include it in the project build.

The initialization of the stack is done by calling the rpmsg_lite_master_init() on the master side and the rpmsg_lite_remote_init() on the remote side. This initialization function must be called prior to any RPMsg-Lite API call. After the init, it is wise to create a communication endpoint, otherwise communication is not possible. This can be done by calling the rpmsg_lite_create_ept() function. It optionally accepts a last argument, where an internal context of the endpoint is created, just in case the RL_USE_STATIC_API option is set to 1. If not, the stack internally calls env_alloc() to allocate dynamic memory for it. In case a callback-based receiving is to be used, an ISR-callback is registered to each new endpoint with user-defined callback data pointer. If a blocking receive is desired (in case of RTOS environment), the rpmsg_queue_create() function must be called before calling rpmsg_lite_create_ept(). The queue handle is passed to the endpoint creation function as a callback data argument and the callback function is set to rpmsg_queue_rx_cb(). Then, it is possible to use rpmsg_queue_receive() function to listen on a queue object for incoming messages. The rpmsg_lite_send() function is used to send messages to the other side.

The RPMsg-Lite also implements no-copy mechanisms for both sending and receiving operations. These methods require specifics that have to be considered when used in an application.

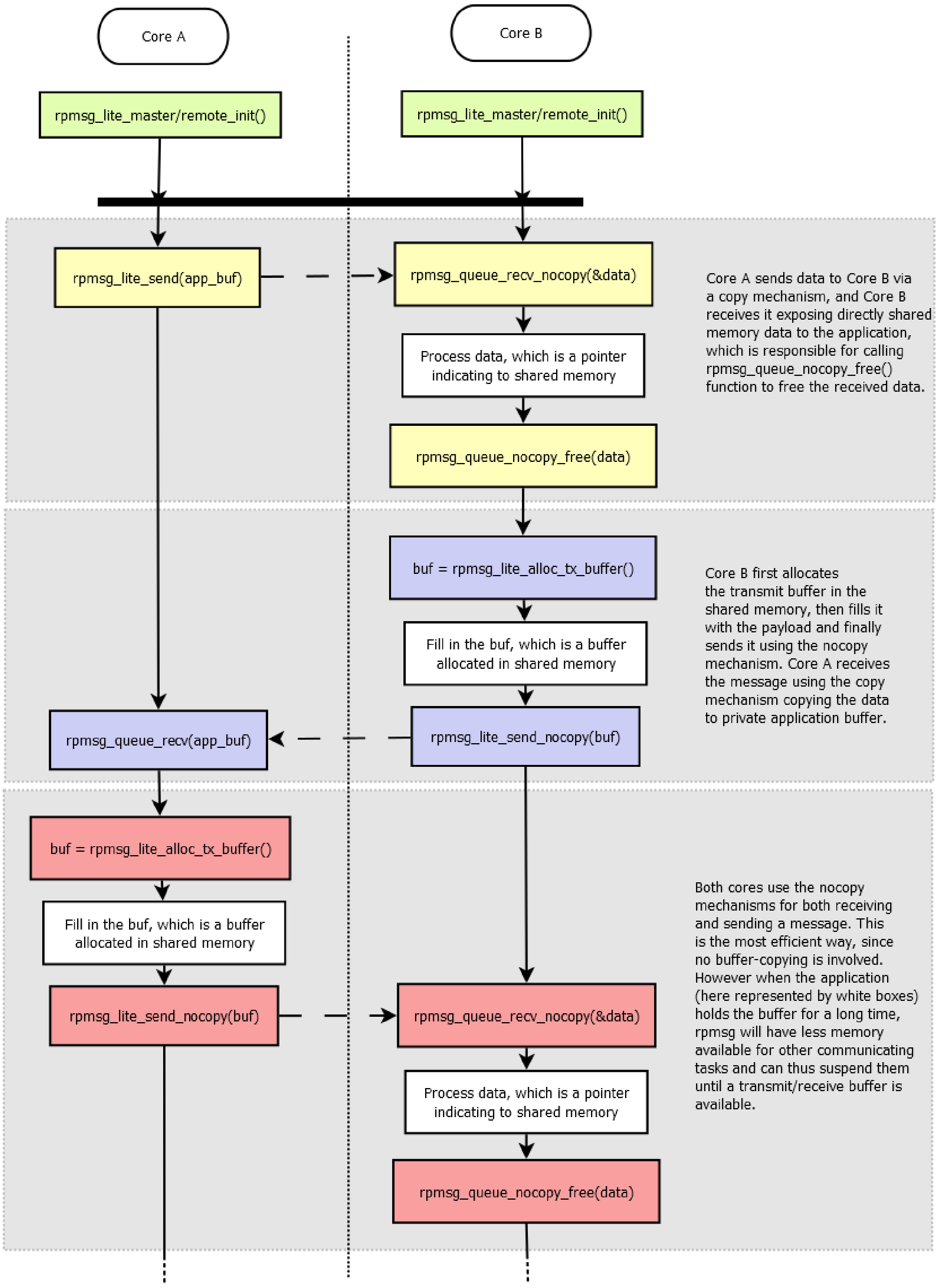
no-copy-send mechanism: This mechanism allows sending messages without the cost for copying data from the application buffer to the RPMsg/virtio buffer in the shared memory. The sequence of no-copy sending steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() function to get the virtio buffer and provide the buffer pointer to the application.
- Fill the data to be sent into the pre-allocated virtio buffer. Ensure that the filled data does not exceed the buffer size (provided as the rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() size output parameter).
- Call the rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() function to send the message to the destination endpoint. Consider the cache functionality and the virtio buffer alignment. See the rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() function description below.

no-copy-receive mechanism: This mechanism allows reading messages without the cost for copying data from the virtio buffer in the shared memory to the application buffer. The sequence of no-copy receiving steps to be performed is as follows:

- Call the rpmsg_queue_recv_nocopy() function to get the virtio buffer pointer to the received data.
- Read received data directly from the shared memory.
- Call the rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free() function to release the virtio buffer and to make it available for the next data transfer.

The user is responsible for destroying any RPMsg-Lite objects he has created in case of deinitialization. In order to do this, the function rpmsg_queue_destroy() is used to destroy a queue, rpmsg_lite_destroy_ept() is used to destroy an endpoint and finally, rpmsg_lite_deinit() is used to deinitialize the RPMsg-Lite intercore communication stack. Deinitialize all endpoints using a queue before deinitializing the queue. Otherwise, you are actively invalidating the used queue handle, which is not allowed. RPMsg-Lite does not check this internally, since its main aim is to be lightweight.


Core A
Core B
rpmsg_lite_master/remote_init()
rpmsg_lite_master/remote_init()
rpmsg_lite_send(app_buf)
rpmsg_queue_recv_nocopy(&data)
Process data, which is a pointer indicating to shared memory
rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free(data)
Core A sends data to Core B via a copy mechanism, and Core B receives it exposing directly shared memory data to the application, which is responsible for calling rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free() function to free the received data.
buf = rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer()
Fill in the buf, which is a buffer allocated in shared memory
rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy(buf)
rpmsg_queue_recv(app_buf)
Core B first allocates the transmit buffer in the shared memory, then fills it with the payload and finally sends it using the nocopy mechanism. Core A receives the message using the copy mechanism copying the data to private application buffer.
buf = rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer()
Fill in the buf, which is a buffer allocated in shared memory
rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy(buf)
rpmsg_queue_recv_nocopy(&data)
Process data, which is a pointer indicating to shared memory
rpmsg_queue_nocopy_free(data)
Both cores use the nocopy mechanisms for both receiving and sending a message. This is the most efficient way, since no buffer-copying is involved. However when the application (here represented by white boxes) holds the buffer for a long time, rpmsg will have less memory available for other communicating tasks and can thus suspend them until a transmit/receive buffer is available.

Examples RPMsg_Lite multicore examples are part of NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com to configure, build and download these packages. To get the board list with multicore support (RPMsg_Lite included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded, see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for RPMsg_Lite multicore examples with 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK RPMsg_Lite multicore examples is using the mcuxsdk-manifests Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk-manifests repo in readme section. Once done the armgcc rpmsg_lite examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/_<board_name>/multicore_examples

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the RPMsg_Lite examples use the 'rpmsg_lite_' name prefix.

Notes

Environment layers implementation Several environment layers are provided in lib/rpmsg_lite/porting/environment folder. Not all of them are fully tested however. Here is the list of environment layers that passed testing:

- rpmsg_env_bm.c
- rpmsg_env_freertos.c
- rpmsg_env_xos.c
- rpmsg_env_threadx.c

The rest of environment layers has been created and used in some experimental projects, it has been running well at the time of creation but due to the lack of unit testing there is no guarantee it is still fully functional.

Shared memory configuration It is important to correctly initialize/configure the shared memory for data exchange in the application. The shared memory must be accessible from both the master and the remote core and it needs to be configured as Non-Cacheable memory. Dedicated shared memory section in liker file is also a good practise, it is recommended to use linker files from MCUXpressSDK packages for NXP devices based applications. It needs to be ensured no other application part/component is unintentionally accessing this part of memory.

Configuration options The RPMsg-Lite can be configured at the compile time. The default configuration is defined in the rpmsg_default_config.h header file. This configuration can be customized by the user by including rpmsg_config.h file with custom settings. The following table summarizes all possible RPMsg-Lite configuration options.

Configuration option	Default value	Usage
RL_MS_PE	(1)	Delay in milliseconds used in non-blocking API functions for polling.
RL_BUFFE	(496)	Size of the buffer payload, it must be more than 1 byte, and has to be word align (including rpmsg header size 16 bytes), if not it will be aligned up
RL_BUFFE	(2)	Number of the buffers, it must be power of two (2, 4, …)
RL_API_H.	(1)	Zero-copy API functions enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_S'	(0)	Static API functions (no dynamic allocation) enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_D	(0)	Memory cache management of shared memory. Use in case of data cache is enabled for shared memory.
RL_CLEAF	(0)	Clearing used buffers before returning back to the pool of free buffers enabled/disabled.
RL_USE_M	(0)	When enabled IPC interrupts are managed by the Multicore Manager (IPC interrupts router), when disabled RPMsg-Lite manages IPC interrupts by itself.
RL_USE_E	(0)	When enabled the environment layer uses its own context. Required for some environments (QNX). The default value is 0 (no context, saves some RAM).
RL_DEBU(	(0)	When enabled buffer pointers passed to rpmsg_lite_send_nocopy() and rpmsg_lite_release_rx_buffer() functions (enabled by RL_API_HAS_ZEROCOPY config) are checked to avoid passing invalid buffer pointer. The default value is 0 (disabled). Do not use in RPMsg-Lite to Linux configuration.
RL_ALLO\	(0)	When enabled the opposite side is notified each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers. Enable this option in RPMsg-Lite to Linux configuration to allow unblocking of the Linux blocking send. The default value is 0 (RPMsg-Lite to RPMsg-Lite communication).
RL_ALLO\	(0)	It allows to define custom shared memory configuration and replacing the shared memory related global settings from rpmsg_config.h This is useful when multiple instances are running in parallel but different shared memory arrangement (vring size & alignment, buffers size & count) is required. The default value is 0 (all RPMsg_Lite instances use the same shared memory arrangement as defined by common config macros).
RL_ASSER	see rpmsg	Assert implementation.

How to format rpmsg-lite code To format code, use the application developed by Google, named *clang-format*. This tool is part of the llvm project. Currently, the clang-format 10.0.0 version is used for rpmsg-lite. The set of style settings used for clang-format is defined in the `.clang-format` file, placed in a root of the rpmsg-lite directory where Python script `run_clang_format.py` can be executed. This script executes the application named *clang-format.exe*. You need to have the path of this application in the OS's environment path, or you need to change the script.

References

[1] M. Novak, M. Cingel, Lockless Shared Memory Based Multicore Communication Protocol

Changelog RPMSG-Lite All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

[v5.3.0]

Added

- RT700 porting layer added support to send rpmsg messages between CM33_0 <-> Hifi1 and CM33_1 <-> Hifi4 cores.
- Add new platform macro RL_PLATFORM_MAX_ISR_COUNT this will set number of IRQ count per platform. This macro is then used in environment layers to set isr_table size where irq handles are registered. It size should match the bit length of VQ_ID so all combinations can fit into table.
- Unit tests updated to improve code coverage, new unit tests added covering static allocations in rtos environment layers.

Fixed

- virtio.h removed typedef uint8_t boolean and in its place use standard C99 bool type to avoid potential type conflicts.
- env_acquire_sync_lock() and env_release_sync_lock() synchronization primitives removed
- Kconfig consolidation, when RL_ALLOW_CUSTOM_SHMEM_CONFIG enabled the platform_get_custom_shmem_config() function needs to be implemented in platform layer to provide custom shared memory configuration for RPMsg-Lite instance.

v5.2.1

Added

- Doc added RPMSG-Lite VirtIO Overview
- Doc added RPSMG-Lite Design Considerations
- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Changed

- Remove limitation that RL_BUFFER_SIZE needs to be power of 2. It just has to be more than 16 bytes, e.g. 16 bytes of rpmsg header and payload size at least 1 byte and word aligned, if not it will be aligned up.

Fixed

- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in platform_notify function in rpmsg_platform.c for imxrt700_m33, imxrt700_hifi4, imxrt700_hifi1 platforms

v5.2.0

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing
- New utility macro RL_CALCULATE_BUFFER_COUNT_DOWN_SAFE to safely determine maximum buffer count within shared memory while preventing integer underflow.
- RT700 platform add support for MCMGR in DSPs

Changed

- Change rpmsg_platform.c to support new MCMGR API
- Improved input validation in initialization functions to properly handle insufficient memory size conditions.
- Refactored repeated buffer count calculation pattern for better code maintainability.
- To make sure that remote has already registered IRQ there is required App level IPC mechanism to notify master about it

Fixed

- Fixed env_wait_for_link_up function to handle timeout in link state checks for baremetal and qnx environment, RL_BLOCK mode can be used to wait indefinitely.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation by adding compile-time check to ensure RL_PLATFORM_HIGHEST_LINK_ID remains within safe range for 16-bit casting in virtqueue ID creation.
- Fixed CERT-C INT30-C violations by adding protection against unsigned integer underflow in shared memory calculations, specifically in shmem_length - (uint32_t)RL_VRING_OVERHEAD and shmem_length - 2U * shmem_config.vring_size expressions.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in platform_interrupt_disable() and similar functions by replacing unsafe cast from uint32_t to int32_t with a return of 0 constant.
- Fixed unsigned integer underflow in rpmsg_lite_alloc_tx_buffer() where subtracting header size from buffer size could wrap around if buffer was too small, potentially leading to incorrect buffer sizing.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in rpmsg_lite.c where size parameter was cast from uint32_t to uint16_t without proper validation.
  - Applied consistent masking approach to both size and flags parameters: (uint16_t)(value & 0xFFFFU).
  - This fix prevents potential data loss when size values exceed 65535.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in env_memset functions by explicitly converting int32_t values to unsigned char using bit masking. This prevents potential data loss or misinterpretation when passing values outside the unsigned char range (0-255) to the standard memset() function.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violations in RPMsg-Lite environment porting: Added validation checks for signed-to-unsigned integer conversions to prevent data loss and misinterpretation.
  - rpmsg_env_freertos.c: Added validation before converting int32_t to UBaseType_t.
  - rpmsg_env_qnx.c: Fixed format string and added validation before assigning to mqstat fields.
  - rpmsg_env_threadx.c: Added validation to prevent integer overflow and negative values.
  - rpmsg_env_xos.c: Added range checking before casting to uint16_t.
  - rpmsg_env_zephyr.c: Added validation before passing values to k_msgq_init.
- Fixed a CERT INT31-C compliance issue in env_get_current_queue_size() function where an unsigned queue count was cast to a signed int32_t without proper validation, which could lead to lost or misinterpreted data if queue size exceeded INT32_MAX.
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in rpmsg_platform.c where memcmp() return value (signed int) was compared with unsigned constant without proper type handling.

- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in rpmsg_platform.c where casting from uint32_t to uint16_t could potentially result in data loss. Changed length variable type from uint16_t to uint32_t to properly handle memory address differences without truncation.
- Fixed potential integer overflow in env_sleep_msec() function in ThreadX environment implementation by rearranging calculation order in the sleep duration formula.
- Fixed CERT-C INT31-C violation in RPMsg-Lite where bitwise NOT operations on integer constants were performed in signed integer context before being cast to unsigned. This could potentially lead to misinterpreted data on imx943 platform.
- Added RL_MAX_BUFFER_COUNT (32768U) and RL_MAX_VRING_ALIGN (65536U) limit to ensure alignment values cannot contribute to integer overflow
- Fixed CERT INT31-C violation in vring_need_event(), added cast to uint16_t for each operand.

v5.1.4 - 27-Mar-2025

Added

- Add KW43B43 porting layer

Changed

- Doxygen bump to version 1.9.6

v5.1.3 - 13-Jan-2025

Added

- Memory cache management of shared memory. Enable with #define RL_USE_DCACHE (1) in rpmsg_config.h in case of data cache is used.
- Cmake/Kconfig support added.
- Porting layers for imx95, imxrt700, mcmxw71x, mcmxw72x, kw47b42 added.

v5.1.2 - 08-Jul-2024

Changed

- Zephyr-related changes.
- Minor Misra corrections.

v5.1.1 - 19-Jan-2024

Added

- Test suite provided.
- Zephyr support added.

Changed

- Minor changes in platform and env. layers, minor test code updates.

v5.1.0 - 02-Aug-2023

Added

- RPMsg-Lite: Added aarch64 support.

Changed

- RPMsg-Lite: Increased the queue size to (2 * RL_BUFFER_COUNT) to cover zero copy cases.
- Code formatting using LLVM16.

Fixed

- Resolved issues in ThreadX env. layer implementation.

v5.0.0 - 19-Jan-2023

Added

- Timeout parameter added to rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up API function.

Changed

- Improved debug check buffers implementation - instead of checking the pointer fits into shared memory check the presence in the VirtIO ring descriptors list.
- VRING_SIZE is set based on number of used buffers now (as calculated in vring_init) - updated for all platforms that are not communicating to Linux rpmsg counterpart.

Fixed

- Fixed wrong RL_VRING_OVERHEAD macro comment in platform.h files
- Misra corrections.

v4.0.0 - 20-Jun-2022

Added

- Added support for custom shared memory arrangement per the RPMsg_Lite instance.
- Introduced new rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() API function - this allows to avoid using busy loops in rtos environments, GitHub PR #21.

Changed

- Adjusted rpmsg_lite_is_link_up() to return RL_TRUE/RL_FALSE.

v3.2.0 - 17-Jan-2022

Added

- Added support for i.MX8 MP multicore platform.

Changed

- Improved static allocations - allow OS-specific objects being allocated statically, GitHub PR #14.
- Aligned rpmsg_env_xos.c and some platform layers to latest static allocation support.

Fixed

- Minor Misra and typo corrections, GitHub PR #19, #20.

v3.1.2 - 16-Jul-2021

Added

- Addressed MISRA 21.6 rule violation in rpmsg_env.h (use SDK's PRINTF in MCUXpressoSDK examples, otherwise stdio printf is used).
- Added environment layers for XOS.
- Added support for i.MX RT500, i.MX RT1160 and i.MX RT1170 multicore platforms.

Fixed

- Fixed incorrect description of the rpmsg_lite_get_endpoint_from_addr function.

Changed

- Updated RL_BUFFER_COUNT documentation (issue #10).
- Updated imxrt600_hifi4 platform layer.

v3.1.1 - 15-Jan-2021

Added

- Introduced RL_ALLOW_CONSUMED_BUFFERS_NOTIFICATION config option to allow opposite side notification sending each time received buffers are consumed and put into the queue of available buffers.
- Added environment layers for Threadx.
- Added support for i.MX8QM multicore platform.

Changed

- Several MISRA C-2012 violations addressed.

v3.1.0 - 22-Jul-2020

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed (7.4).
- Fixed missing lock in rpmsg_lite_rx_callback() for QNX env.
- Correction of rpmsg_lite_instance structure members description.
- Address -Waddress-of-packed-member warnings in GCC9.

Changed

- Clang update to v10.0.0, code re-formatted.

v3.0.0 - 20-Dec-2019

Added

- Added support for several new multicore platforms.

Fixed

- MISRA C-2012 violations fixed, incl. data types consolidation.
- Code formatted.

v2.2.0 - 20-Mar-2019

Added

- Added configuration macro RL_DEBUG_CHECK_BUFFERS.
- Several MISRA violations fixed.
- Added environment layers for QNX and Zephyr.
- Allow environment context required for some environment (controlled by the RL_USE_ENVIRONMENT_CONTEXT configuration macro).
- Data types consolidation.

v1.1.0 - 28-Apr-2017

Added

- Supporting i.MX6SX and i.MX7D MPU platforms.
- Supporting LPC5411x MCU platform.
- Baremental and FreeRTOS support.
- Support of copy and zero-copy transfer.
- Support of static API (without dynamic allocations).

Multicore Manager

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-mcmgr (Multicore Manager)

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK Multicore Manager middleware delivery and it contains Multicore Manager component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run Multicore Manager examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-mcmgr component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit Multicore Manager - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

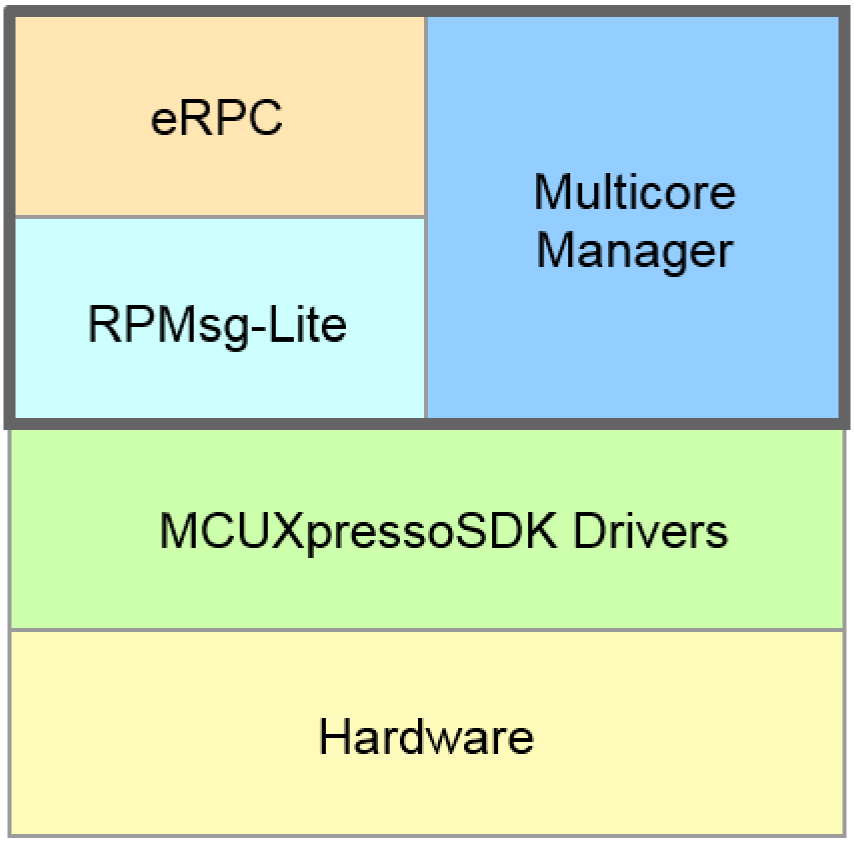
For Further API documentation, please look at doxygen documentation

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the mcmgr project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

Multicore Manager (MCMGR) The Multicore Manager (MCMGR) software library provides a number of services for multicore systems. This library is distributed as a part of the Multicore SDK (MCSDK). Together, the MCSDK and the MCUXpresso SDK (SDK) form a framework for development of software for NXP multicore devices.

The MCMGR component is located in the <MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr directory.



The Multicore Manager provides the following major functions:

- Maintains information about all cores in system.
- Secondary/auxiliary core(s) startup and shutdown.
- Remote core monitoring and event handling.

Usage of the MCMGR software component The main use case of MCMGR is the secondary/auxiliary core start. This functionality is performed by the public API function.

Example of MCMGR usage to start secondary core:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    /* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass "1" as startup data,␣
↪starting synchronously. */
    MCMGR_StartCore(kMCMGR_Core1, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, 1, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);
.
.
.
    /* Stop secondary core execution. */
    MCMGR_StopCore(kMCMGR_Core1);
}
```

Some platforms allow stopping and re-starting the secondary core application again, using the MCMGR_StopCore / MCMGR_StartCore API calls. It is necessary to ensure the initially loaded image is not corrupted before re-starting, especially if it deals with the RAM target. Cache coherence has to be considered/ensured as well.

It could also happen that the secondary core application stops running correctly and the primary core application does not know about that situation. Therefore, it is beneficial to implement a mechanism for core health monitoring. The *test_heartbeat* unit test can serve as an example how to ensure that: secondary core could periodically send heartbeat signals to the primary core using MCMGR_TriggerEvent() API to indicate that it is alive and functioning properly.

Another important MCMGR feature is the ability for remote core monitoring and handling of events such as reset, exception, and application events. Application-specific callback functions for events are registered by the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() API. Triggering these events is done using the MCMGR_TriggerEvent() API. mcmgr_event_type_t enums all possible event types.

An example of MCMGR usage for remote core monitoring and event handling. Code for the primary side:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA  (1)
#define APP_NUMBER_OF_CORES (2)
#define APP_SECONDARY_CORE kMCMGR_Core1

/* Callback function registered via the MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and triggered by MCMGR_TriggerEvent()␣
↪called on the secondary core side */
void RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler(mcmgr_core_t coreNum, uint16_t eventData, void *context)
{
    uint16_t *data = &((uint16_t *)context)[coreNum];

    *data = eventData;
}

void main()
{
    uint16_t RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[NUMBER_OF_CORES] = {0};

    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();

    /* Register the application event before starting the secondary core */
    MCMGR_RegisterEvent(kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, RPMsgRemoteReadyEventHandler, (void␣
↪*)RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData);
```

(continues on next page)

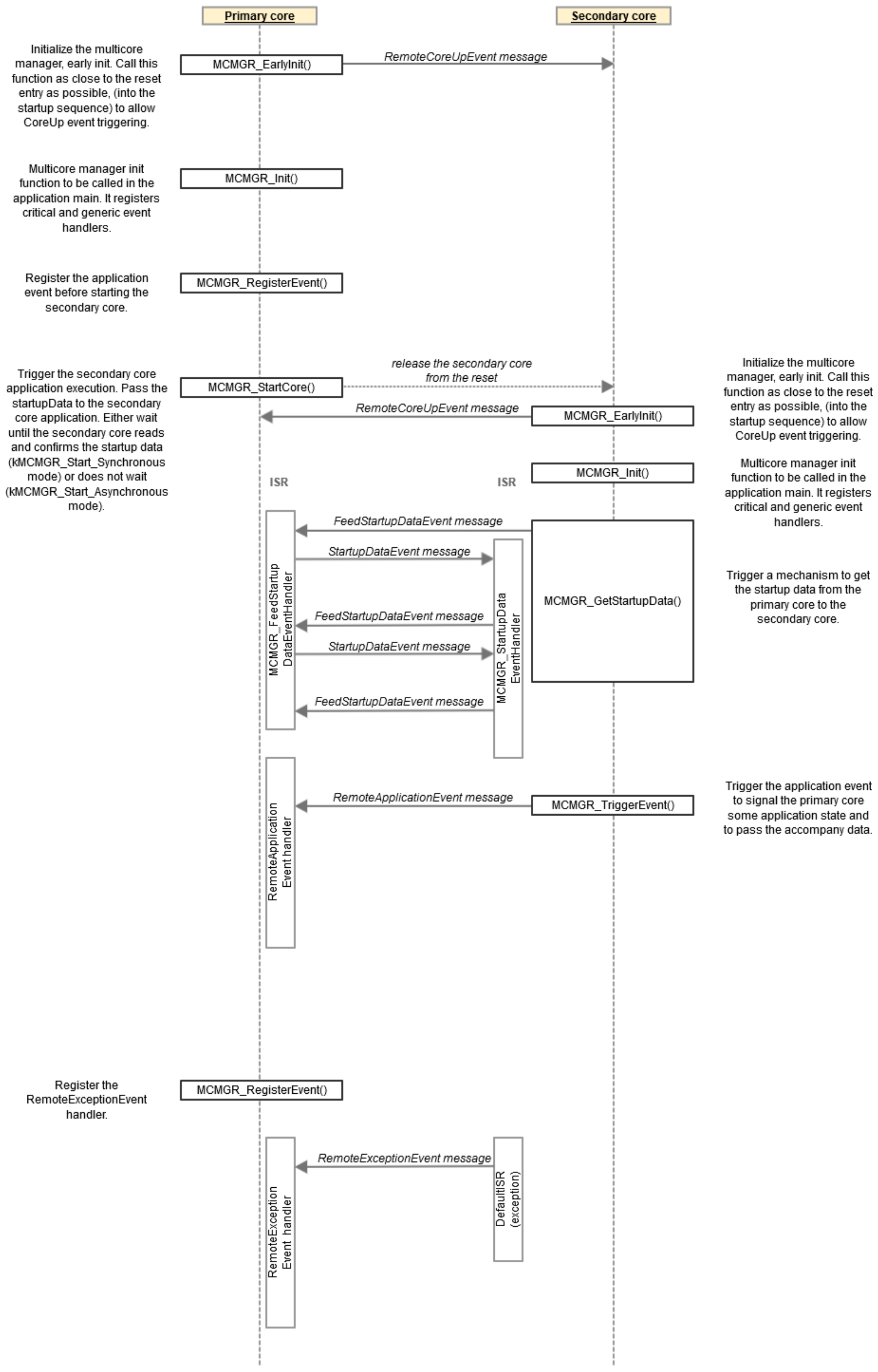
(continued from previous page)

```
    /* Boot secondary core application from the CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, pass rpmsg_lite_base address␣
↪as startup data, starting synchronously. */
    MCMGR_StartCore(APP_SECONDARY_CORE, CORE1_BOOT_ADDRESS, (uint32_t)rpmsg_lite_
↪base, kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous);

    /* Wait until the secondary core application signals the rpmsg remote has been initialized and is ready to␣
↪communicate. */
    while(APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA != RPMsgRemoteReadyEventData[APP_SECONDARY_
↪CORE]) {};
.
.
.
}
```

Code for the secondary side:

```
#include "mcmgr.h"

#define APP_RPMSG_READY_EVENT_DATA  (1)

void main()
{
    /* Initialize MCMGR - low level multicore management library.
       Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible,
       (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering. */
    MCMGR_EarlyInit();

    /* Initialize MCMGR, install generic event handlers */
    MCMGR_Init();
.
.
.

    /* Signal the to other core that we are ready by triggering the event and passing the APP_RPMSG_
↪READY_EVENT_DATA */
    MCMGR_TriggerEvent(kMCMGR_Core0, kMCMGR_RemoteApplicationEvent, APP_RPMSG_
↪READY_EVENT_DATA);
.
.
.
}
```

MCMGR Data Exchange Diagram The following picture shows how the handshakes are supposed to work between the two cores in the MCMGR software.


Primary core
Secondary core
Initialize the multicore manager, early init. Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible, (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering.
MCMGR_EarlyInit()
RemoteCoreUpEvent message
Multicore manager init function to be called in the application main. It registers critical and generic event handlers.
MCMGR_Init()
Register the application event before starting the secondary core.
MCMGR_RegisterEvent()
Trigger the secondary core application execution. Pass the startupData to the secondary core application. Either wait until the secondary core reads and confirms the startup data (kMCMGR_Start_Synchronous mode) or does not wait (kMCMGR_Start_Asynchronous mode).
MCMGR_StartCore()
release the secondary core from the reset
Initialize the multicore manager, early init. Call this function as close to the reset entry as possible, (into the startup sequence) to allow CoreUp event triggering.
RemoteCoreUpEvent message
MCMGR_EarlyInit()
MCMGR_Init()
Multicore manager init function to be called in the application main. It registers critical and generic event handlers.
ISR
ISR
FeedStartupDataEvent message
StartupDataEvent message
MCMGR_FeedStartup DataEventHandler
MCMGR_StartupData EventHandler
MCMGR_GetStartupData()
Trigger a mechanism to get the startup data from the primary core to the secondary core.
FeedStartupDataEvent message
StartupDataEvent message
FeedStartupDataEvent message
RemoteApplicationEvent message
MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
Trigger the application event to signal the primary core some application state and to pass the accompany data.
RemoteApplication Event handler
Register the RemoteExceptionEvent handler.
MCMGR_RegisterEvent()
RemoteExceptionEvent message
RemoteException Event handler
DefaultISR (exception)

Changelog Multicore Manager All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

[v5.0.2]

Added

- Added gcov options and configs to support mcmgr code coverage
- Added new test_weak_mu_isr testcase for devices with MU peripheral
- Added new test_heartbeat testcase showing heartbeat mechanism between primary and secondary cores using the MCMGR

v5.0.1

Added

- Added frdmimxrt1186 unit testing

Changed

- [KW43] Rename core#1 reset control register

Fixed

- Added CX flag into CMakeLists.txt to allow c++ build compatibility.
- Fix path to mcmgr headers directory in doxyfile

v5.0.0

Added

- Added MCMGR_BUSY_POLL_COUNT macro to prevent infinite polling loops in MCMGR operations.
- Implemented timeout mechanism for all polling loops in MCMGR code.
- Added support to handle more then two cores. Breaking API change by adding parameter coreNum specifying core number in functions bellow.
  - MCMGR_GetStartupData(uint32_t *startupData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - MCMGR_TriggerEvent(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - MCMGR_TriggerEventForce(mcmgr_event_type_t type, uint16_t eventData, mcmgr_core_t coreNum)
  - typedef void (*mcmgr_event_callback_t)(uint16_t data, void *context, mcmgr_core_t coreNum);

When registering the event with function MCMGR_RegisterEvent() user now needs to provide callbackData pointer to array of elements per every core in system (see README.md for example).In case of systems with only two cores the coreNum in callback can be ignored as events can arrive only from one core. Please see Porting guide for more details: PortingGuideTo_v5.md

- Updated all porting files to support new MCMGR API.
- Added new platform specific include file mcmgr_platform.h. It will contain common platform specific macros that can be then used in mcmgr and application. e.g. platform core count MCMGR_CORECOUNT 4.
- Move all header files to new inc directory.
- Added new platform-specific include files inc/platform/<platform_name>/mcmgr_platform.h.

Added

- Add MCXL20 porting layer and unit testing

v4.1.7

Fixed

- mcmgr_stop_core_internal() function now returns kStatus_MCMGR_NotImplemented status code instead of kStatus_MCMGR_Success when device does not support stop of secondary core. Ports affected: kw32w1, kw45b41, kw45b42, mcxw716, mcxw727.

[v4.1.6]

Added

- Multicore Manager moved to standalone repository.
- Add porting layers for imxrt700, mcmxw727, kw47b42.
- New MCMGR_ProcessDeferredRxIsr() API added.

[v4.1.5]

Added

- Add notification into MCMGR_EarlyInit and mcmgr_early_init_internal functions to avoid using uninitialized data in their implementations.

[v4.1.4]

Fixed

- Avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Messaging Unit Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- Messaging Unit RX and status registers are cleared after the initialization.

[v4.1.3]

Added

- Add porting layers for imxrt1180.

Fixed

- mu_isr() updated to avoid calling tx isr callbacks when respective Transmit Interrupt Enable flag is not set in the CR/TCR register.
- mcmgr_mu_internal.c code adaptation to new supported SoCs.

[v4.1.2]

Fixed

- Update mcmgr_stop_core_internal() implementations to set core state to kMCMGR_ResetCoreState.

[v4.1.0]

Fixed

- Code adjustments to address MISRA C-2012 Rules

[v4.0.3]

Fixed

- Documentation updated to describe handshaking in a graphic form.
- Minor code adjustments based on static analysis tool findings

[v4.0.2]

Fixed

- Align porting layers to the updated MCUXpressoSDK feature files.

[v4.0.1]

Fixed

- Code formatting, removed unused code

[v4.0.0]

Added

- Add new MCMGR_TriggerEventForce() API.

[v3.0.0]

Removed

- Removed MCMGR_LoadApp(), MCMGR_MapAddress() and MCMGR_SignalReady()

Modified

- Modified MCMGR_GetStartupData()

Added

- Added MCMGR_EarlyInit(), MCMGR_RegisterEvent() and MCMGR_TriggerEvent()
- Added the ability for remote core monitoring and event handling

[v2.0.1]

Fixed

- Updated to be Misra compliant.

[v2.0.0]

Added

- Support for lpcxpresso54114 board.

[v1.1.0]

Fixed

- Ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

[v1.0.0]

Added

- Initial release.

eRPC

MCUXpresso SDK : mcuxsdk-middleware-erpc

Overview This repository is for MCUXpresso SDK eRPC middleware delivery and it contains eRPC component officially provided in NXP MCUXpresso SDK. This repository is part of the MCUXpresso SDK overall delivery which is composed of several sub-repositories/projects. Navigate to the top/parent repository mcuxsdk for the complete delivery of MCUXpresso SDK to be able to build and run eRPC examples that are based on mcux-sdk-middleware-erpc component.

Documentation Overall details can be reviewed here: MCUXpresso SDK Online Documentation

Visit eRPC - Documentation to review details on the contents in this sub-repo.

Setup Instructions on how to install the MCUXpresso SDK provided from GitHub via west manifest Getting Started with SDK - Detailed Installation Instructions

Contribution We welcome and encourage the community to submit patches directly to the eRPC project placed on github. Contributing can be managed via pull-requests. Before a pull-request is created the code should be tested and properly formatted.

---

eRPC

About

eRPC (Embedded RPC) is an open source Remote Procedure Call (RPC) system for multichip embedded systems and heterogeneous multicore SoCs.

Unlike other modern RPC systems, such as the excellent Apache Thrift, eRPC distinguishes itself by being designed for tightly coupled systems, using plain C for remote functions, and having a small code size (<5kB). It is not intended for high performance distributed systems over a network.

eRPC does not force upon you any particular API style. It allows you to export existing C functions, without having to change their prototypes. (There are limits, of course.) And although the internal infrastructure is written in C++, most users will be able to use only the simple C setup APIs shown in the examples below.

A code generator tool called erpcgen is included. It accepts input IDL files, having an .erpc extension, that have definitions of your data types and remote interfaces, and generates the shim code that handles serialization and invocation. erpcgen can generate either C/C++ or Python code.

Example .erpc file:

```
// Define a data type.
enum LEDName { kRed, kGreen, kBlue }

// An interface is a logical grouping of functions.
interface IO {
    // Simple function declaration with an empty reply.
    set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) -> void
}
```

Client side usage:

```
void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* init eRPC client IO service */
    initIO_client(client_manager);

    // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
    set_led(kGreen, true);

    /* deinit objects */
    deinitIO_client();
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

```
void example_client(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_client_t client_manager;

    /* Init eRPC client infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    client_manager = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* scope for client service */
    {
        /* init eRPC client IO service */
        IO_client client(client_manager);

        // Now we can call the remote function to turn on the green LED.
        client.set_led(kGreen, true);
    }

    /* deinit objects */
    erpc_client_deinit(client_manager);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

Server side usage:

```
// Implement the remote function.
void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) {
    // implementation goes here
}

void example_server(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_server_t server;
    erpc_service_t service = create_IO_service();

    /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* add custom service implementation to the server */
    erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);

    // Run the server.
    erpc_server_run();

    /* deinit objects */
    destroy_IO_service(service);
    erpc_server_deinit(server);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

```
// Implement the remote function.
class IO : public IO_interface
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
{
    /* eRPC call definition */
    void set_led(LEDName whichLed, bool onOrOff) override {
        // implementation goes here
    }
}

void example_server(void) {
    erpc_transport_t transport;
    erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
    erpc_server_t server;
    IO IOImpl;
    IO_service io(&IOImpl);

    /* Init eRPC server infrastructure */
    transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init(Driver_USART0);
    message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
    server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);

    /* add custom service implementation to the server */
    erpc_add_service_to_server(server, &io);

    /* poll for requests */
    erpc_status_t err = server.run();

    /* deinit objects */
    erpc_server_deinit(server);
    erpc_mbf_dynamic_deinit(message_buffer_factory);
    erpc_transport_tcp_deinit(transport);
}
```

A number of transports are supported, and new transport classes are easy to write.

Supported transports can be found in *erpc/erpc_c/transport* folder. E.g:

- CMSIS UART
- NXP Kinetis SPI and DSPI
- POSIX and Windows serial port
- TCP/IP (mostly for testing)
- NXP RPMsg-Lite / RPMsg TTY
- SPIdev Linux
- USB CDC
- NXP Messaging Unit

eRPC is available with an unrestrictive BSD 3-clause license. See the LICENSE file for the full license text.

Releases eRPC releases

Edge releases Edge releases can by found on eRPC CircleCI webpage. Choose build of interest, then platform target and choose ARTIFACTS tab. Here you can find binary application from chosen build.

Documentation Documentation is in the wiki section.

eRPC Infrastructure documentation

Examples *Example IDL* is available in the *examples/* folder.

Plenty of eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples can be also found in NXP MCUXpressoSDK packages. Visit https://mcuxpresso.nxp.com to configure, build and download these packages.

To get the board list with multicore support (eRPC included) use filtering based on Middleware and search for 'multicore' string. Once the selected package with the multicore middleware is downloaded, see

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples for eRPC multicore examples (RPMsg_Lite or Messaging Unit transports used) or

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples for eRPC multiprocessor examples (UART or SPI transports used).

eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

Another way of getting NXP MCUXpressoSDK eRPC multicore and multiprocessor examples is using the mcux-sdk Github repo. Follow the description how to use the West tool to clone and update the mcuxsdk repo in readme Overview section. Once done the armgcc eRPC examples can be found in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multicore_examples or in

mcuxsdk/examples/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples folders.

You can use the evkmimxrt1170 as the board_name for instance. Similar to MCUXpressoSDK packages the eRPC examples use the 'erpc_' name prefix.

References This section provides links to interesting erpc-based projects, articles, blogs or guides:

- erpc (EmbeddedRPC) getting started notes
- ERPC Linux Local Environment Construction and Use
- The New Wio Terminal eRPC Firmware

Directories *doc* - Documentation.

doxygen - Configuration and support files for running Doxygen over the eRPC C++ infrastructure and erpcgen code.

erpc_c - Holds C/C++ infrastructure for eRPC. This is the code you will include in your application.

erpc_python - Holds Python version of the eRPC infrastructure.

erpcgen - Holds source code for erpcgen and makefiles or project files to build erpcgen on Windows, Linux, and OS X.

erpcsniffer - Holds source code for erpcsniffer application.

examples - Several example IDL files.

mk - Contains common makefiles for building eRPC components.

test - Client/server tests. These tests verify the entire communications path from client to server and back.

utilities - Holds utilities which bring additional benefit to eRPC apps developers.

Building and installing These build instructions apply to host PCs and embedded Linux. For bare metal or RTOS embedded environments, you should copy the *erpc_c* directory into your application sources.

CMake and KConfig build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the `erpcgen` executable, and optionally the unit tests and examples.

CMake is compatible with gcc and clang. On Windows local MingGW downloaded by *script* can be used.

Make build:

It builds a static library of the eRPC C/C++ infrastructure, the `erpcgen` executable, and optionally the unit tests.

The makefiles are compatible with gcc or clang on Linux, OS X, and Cygwin. A Windows build of erpcgen using Visual Studio is also available in the *erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14* directory. There is also an Xcode project file in the *erpcgen* directory, which can be used to build erpcgen for OS X.

Requirements eRPC now support building **erpcgen**, **erpc_lib**, **tests** and **C examples** using CMake.

Requirements when using CMake:

- **CMake** (minimal version 3.20.0)
- Generator - **Make**, **Ninja**, …
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC**, **CLANG**, …
- **Binson** - https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/
- **Flex** - https://github.com/westes/flex/

Requirements when using Make:

- **Make**
- **C/C++ compiler** - **GCC**, **CLANG**, …
- **Binson** - https://www.gnu.org/software/bison/
- **Flex** - https://github.com/westes/flex/

Windows Related steps to build **erpcgen** using **Visual Studio** are described in `erpcgen/VisualStudio_v14/readme_erpcgen.txt`.

To install MinGW, Bison, Flex locally on Windows:

~~~
./install_dependencies.ps1
* ```

#### Linux

```bash
./install_dependencies.sh
~~~

Mandatory for case, when build for different architecture is needed

- gcc-multilib, g++-multilib

Mac OS X

```
./install_dependencies.sh
```

Building

CMake and KConfig eRPC use CMake and KConfig to configurate and build eRPC related targets. KConfig can be edited by *prj.conf* or *menuconfig* when building.

Generate project, config and build. In *erpc/* execute:

```
cmake -B ./build # in erpc/build generate cmake project
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and␣
↪examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```

**CMake will use the system's default compilers and generator

If you want to use Windows and locally installed MinGW, use *CMake preset* :

```
cmake --preset mingw64 # Generate project in ./build using mingw64's make and compilers
cmake --build ./build --target menuconfig # Build menuconfig and configurate erpcgen, erpc_lib, tests and␣
↪examples
cmake --build ./build # Build all selected target from prj.conf/menuconfig
```

Make To build the library and erpcgen, run from the repo root directory:

```
make
```

To install the library, erpcgen, and include files, run:

```
make install
```

You may need to sudo the `make install`.

By default this will install into `/usr/local`. If you want to install elsewhere, set the `PREFIX` environment variable. Example for installing into `/opt`:

```
make install PREFIX=/opt
```

List of top level Makefile targets:

- `erpc`: build the liberpc.a static library
- `erpcgen`: build the erpcgen tool
- `erpcsniffer`: build the sniffer tool
- `test`: build the unit tests under the *test* directory
- `all`: build all of the above
- `install`: install liberpc.a, erpcgen, and include files

eRPC code is validated with respect to the C++ 11 standard.

Installing for Python To install the Python infrastructure for eRPC see instructions in the *erpc python readme*.

Known issues and limitations

- Static allocations controlled by the ERPC_ALLOCATION_POLICY config macro are not fully supported yet, i.e. not all erpc objects can be allocated statically now. It deals with the ongoing process and the full static allocations support will be added in the future.

Code providing Repository on Github contains two main branches: **main** and **develop**. Code is developed on **develop** branch. Release version is created via merging **develop** branch into **main** branch.

---

eRPC Getting Started

Overview This *Getting Started User Guide* shows software developers how to use Remote Procedure Calls (RPC) in embedded multicore microcontrollers (eRPC).

The eRPC documentation is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/ middleware/multicore/erpc/doc* folder.

Create an eRPC application This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
   1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
   2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
   3. Add infrastructure files.
   4. Add user code for client and server applications.
   5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

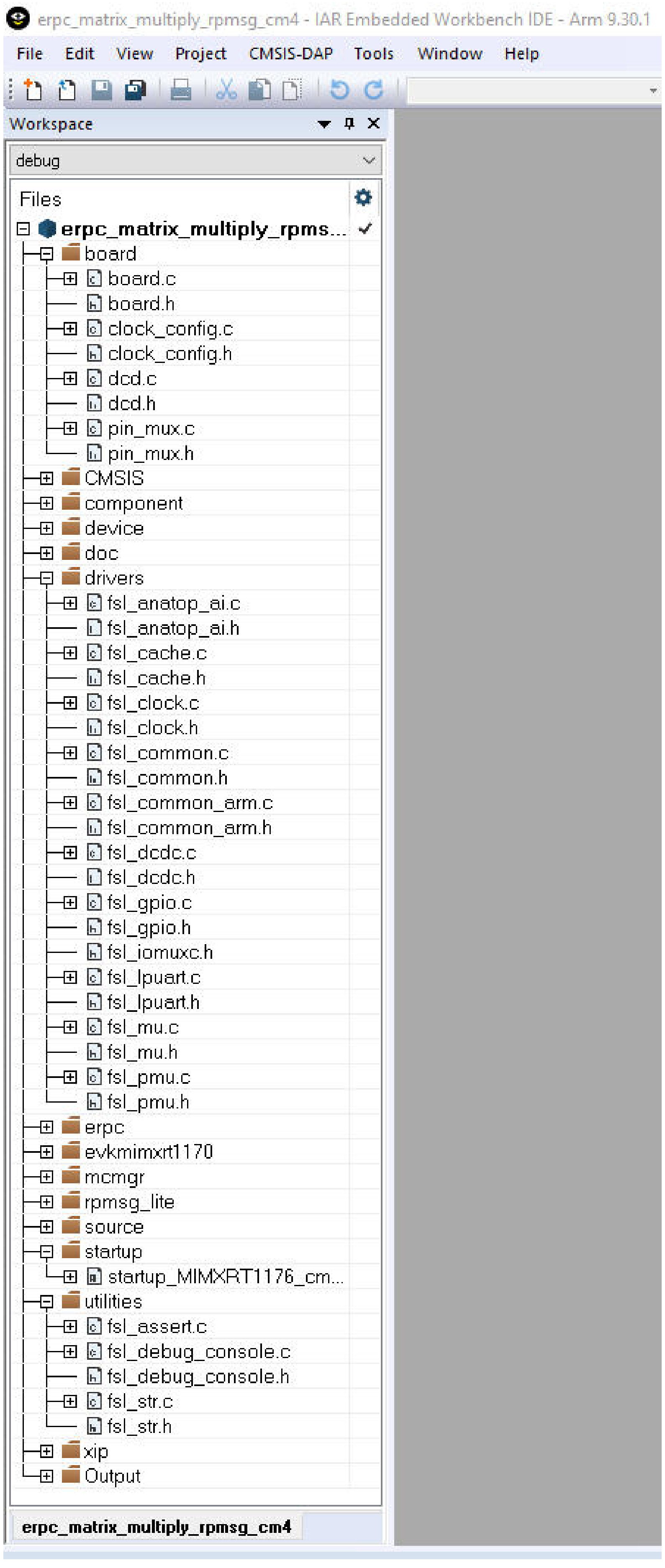
Multicore server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4/iar

The project files for the eRPC server have the `_cm4` suffix.

Server project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

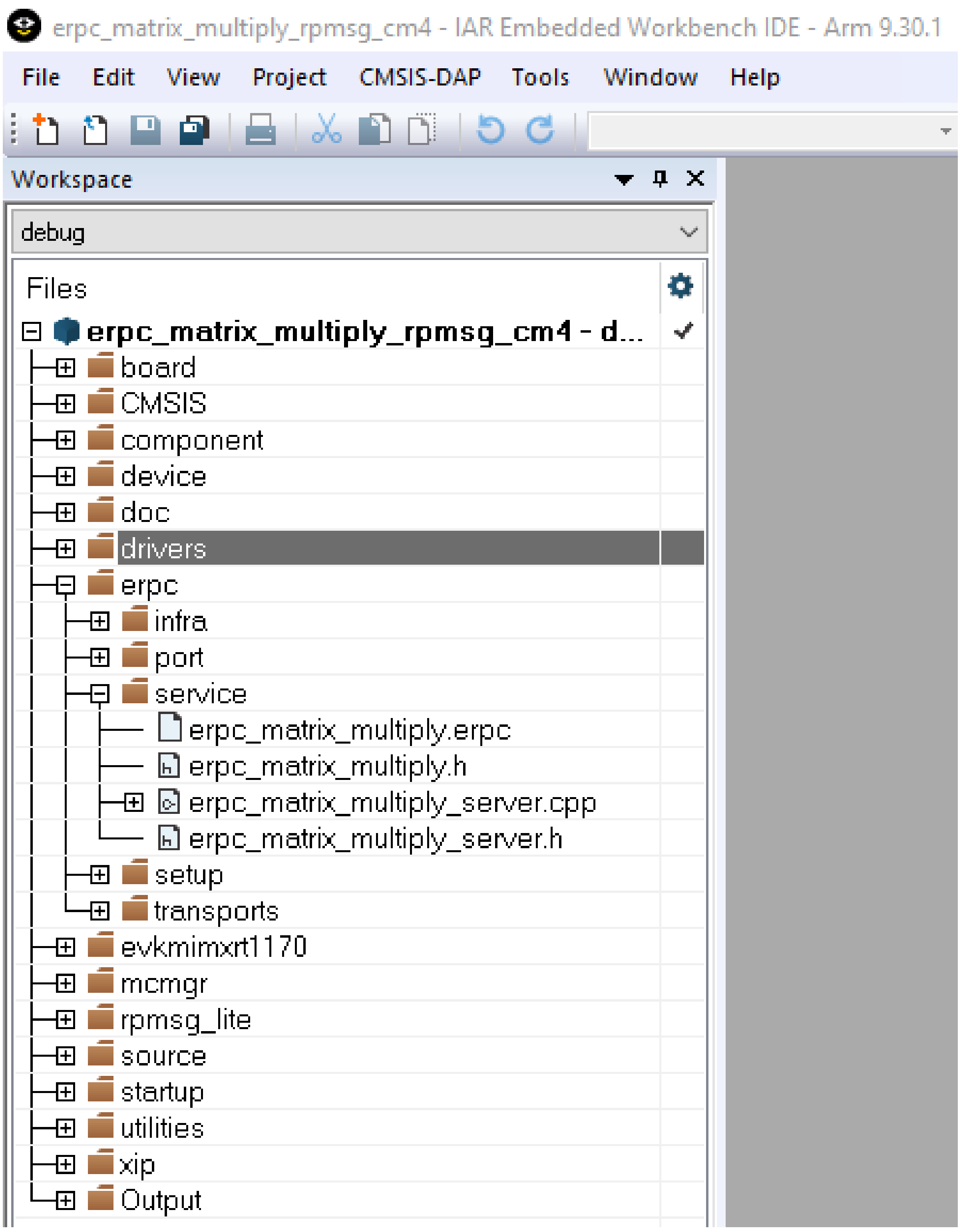
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server related generated files The server-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - d...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
port
service
erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc
erpc_matrix_multiply.h
erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp
erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
setup
transports
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output

|

|

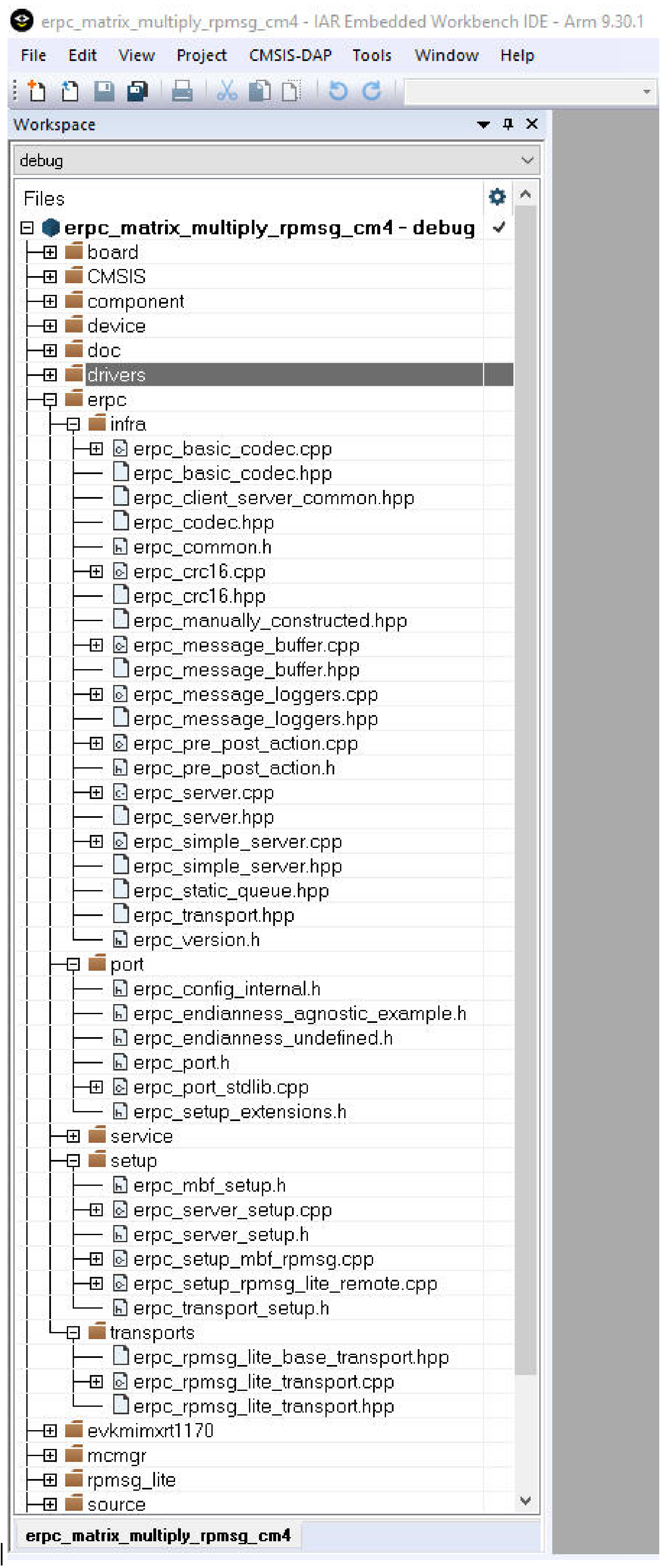
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the *C/C++* language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, erpc_server.hpp, erpc_server.cpp, erpc_simple_server.hpp, and erpc_simple_server.cpp, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The erpc_common.hpp file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.h and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
  - The erpc_transport.h file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
  - erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
  - erpc_config_internal.h internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The erpc_server_setup.h and erpc_server_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files need to be added into the server project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
│  ├─ infra
│  │  ├─ erpc_basic_codec.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_basic_codec.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_server_common.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_codec.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_common.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_crc16.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_crc16.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_buffer.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_buffer.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_loggers.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_loggers.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_pre_post_action.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_server.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_server.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_simple_server.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_simple_server.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_static_queue.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_transport.hpp
│  │  └─ erpc_version.h
│  ├─ port
│  │  ├─ erpc_config_internal.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_endianness_undefined.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_port.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
│  │  └─ erpc_setup_extensions.h
│  ├─ service
│  ├─ setup
│  │  ├─ erpc_mbf_setup.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_server_setup.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_server_setup.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp
│  │  └─ erpc_transport_setup.h
│  └─ transports
│     ├─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
│     ├─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
│     └─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
├─ rpmsg_lite
├─ source
```

|

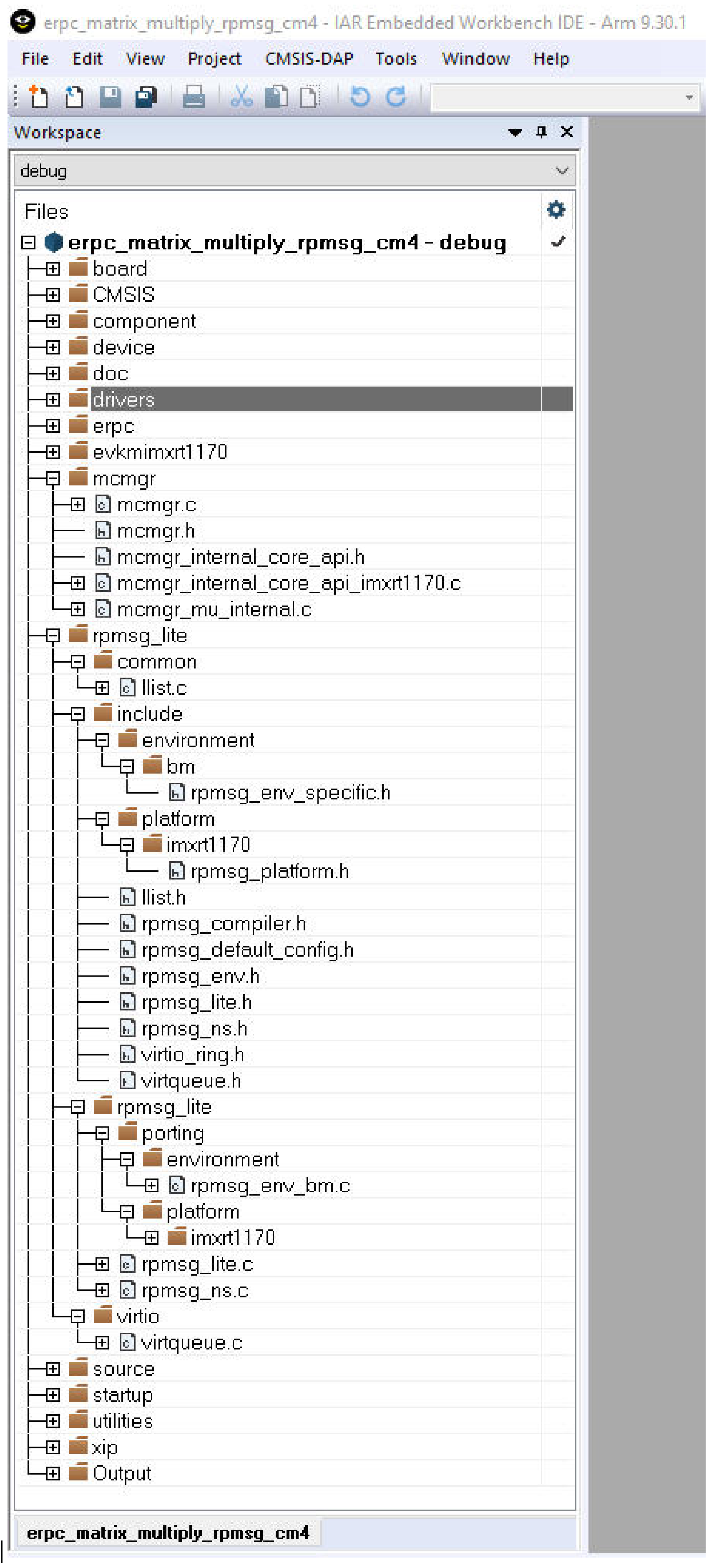
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
│  ├─ mcmgr.c
│  ├─ mcmgr.h
│  ├─ mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
│  ├─ mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
│  └─ mcmgr_mu_internal.c
├─ rpmsg_lite
│  ├─ common
│  │  └─ llist.c
│  ├─ include
│  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  └─ bm
│  │  │     └─ rpmsg_env_specific.h
│  │  ├─ platform
│  │  │  └─ imxrt1170
│  │  │     └─ rpmsg_platform.h
│  │  ├─ llist.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_compiler.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_default_config.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_env.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_lite.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_ns.h
│  │  ├─ virtio_ring.h
│  │  └─ virtqueue.h
│  ├─ rpmsg_lite
│  │  ├─ porting
│  │  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  │  └─ rpmsg_env_bm.c
│  │  │  └─ platform
│  │  │     └─ imxrt1170
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_lite.c
│  │  └─ rpmsg_ns.c
│  └─ virtio
│     └─ virtqueue.c
├─ source
├─ startup
├─ utilities
├─ xip
└─ Output
```

|

Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_core1.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4

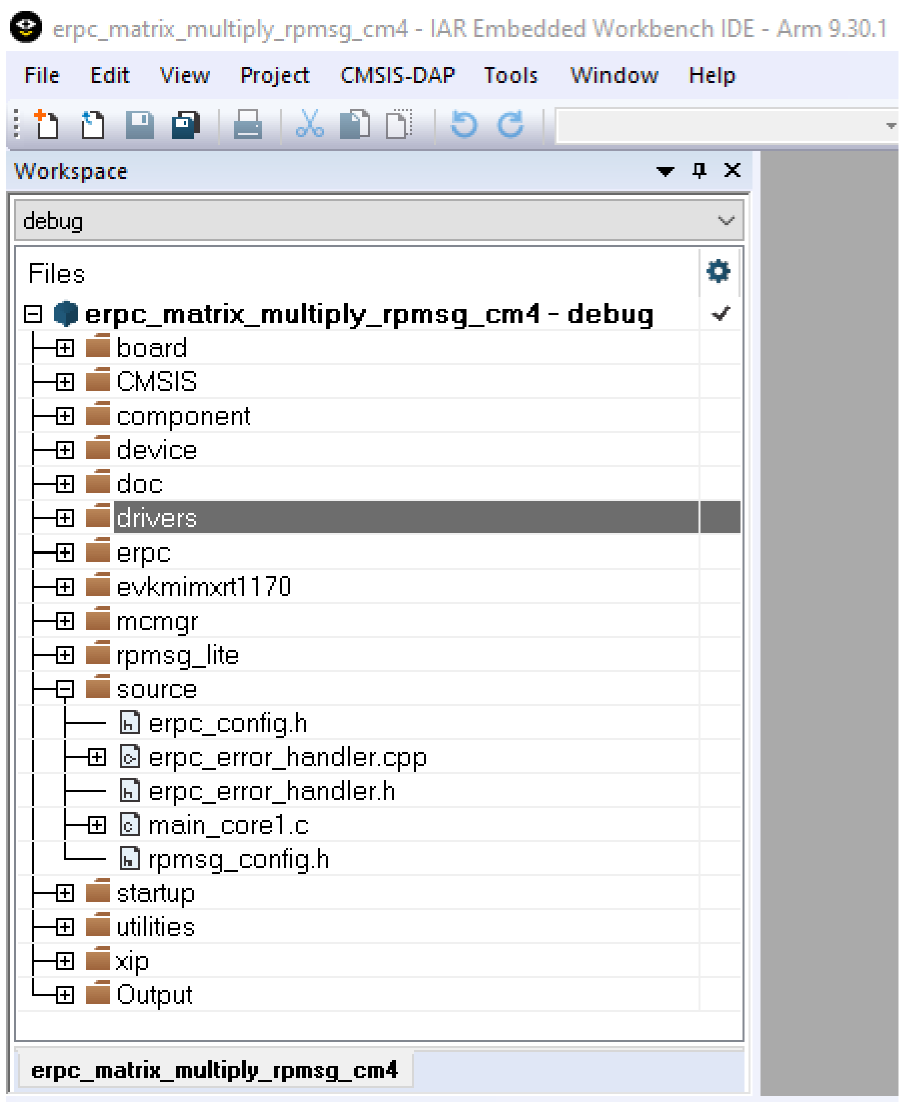
The main_core1.c file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
  ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/ erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg* folder.



Parent topic: Multicore server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

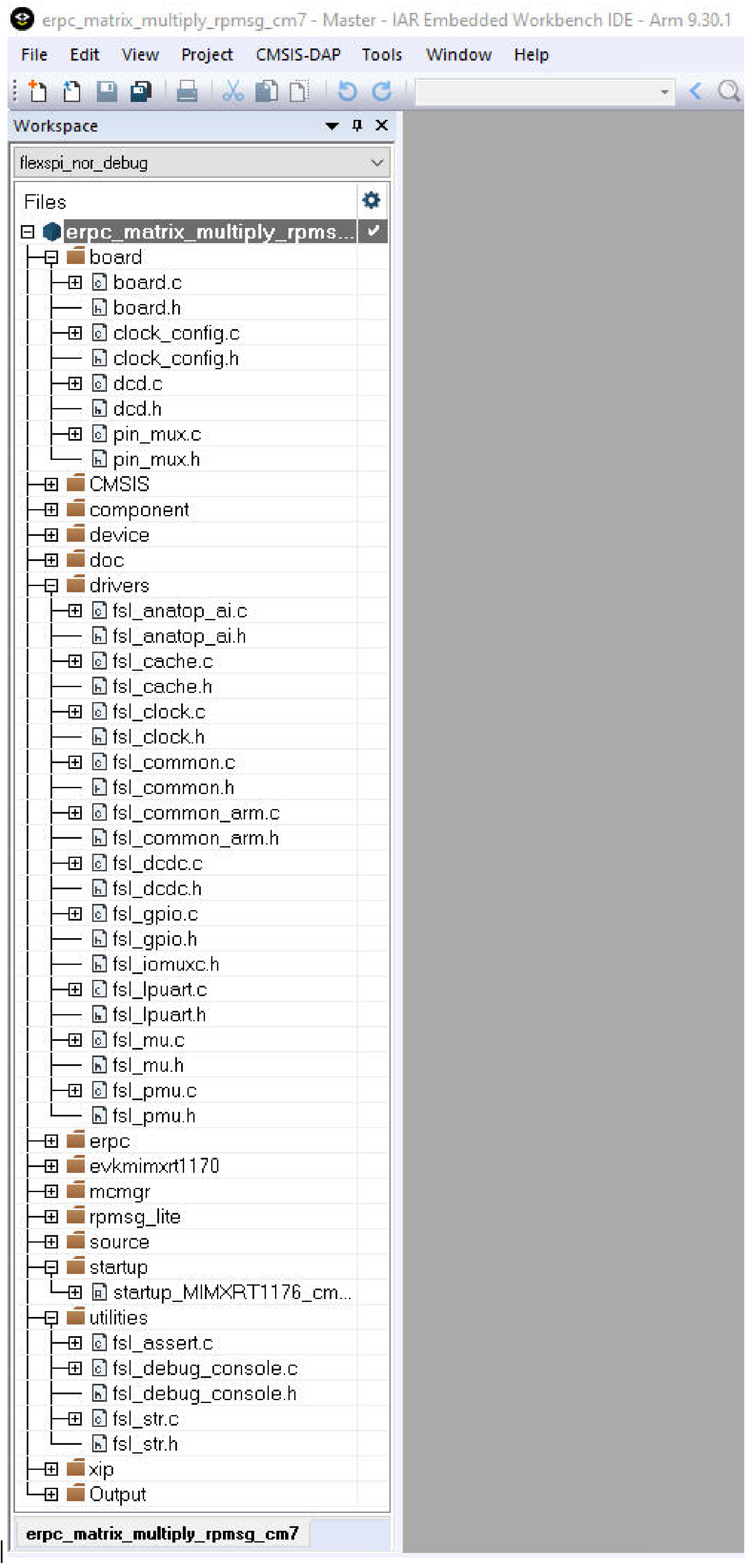
Multicore client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar

Project files for the eRPC client have the _cm7 suffix.

Client project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

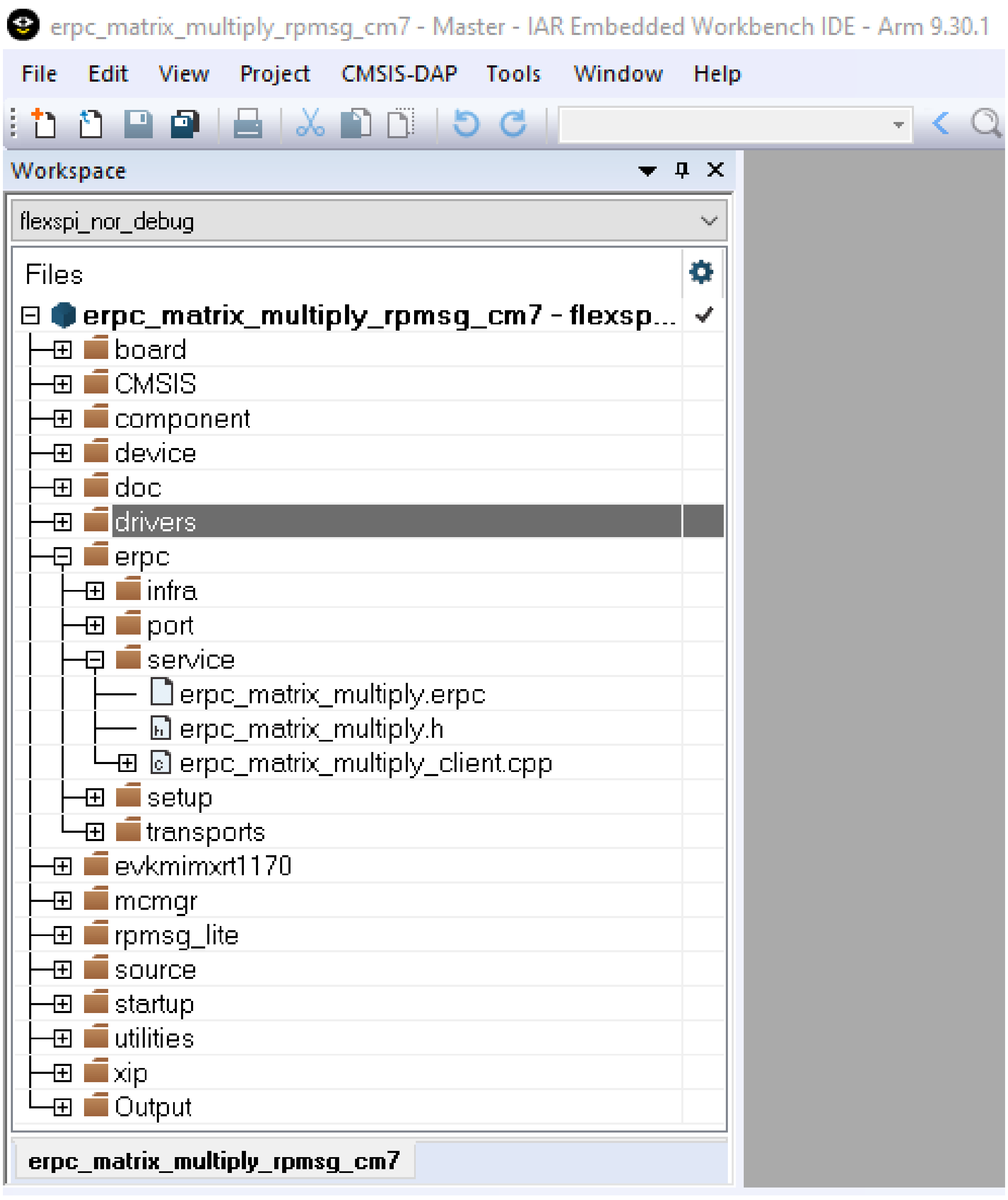
|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client-related generated files The client-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/* folder.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexsp...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
port
service
erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc
erpc_matrix_multiply.h
erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp
setup
transports
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, erpc_client_manager.h and erpc_client_manager.cpp, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- erpc_common.h file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.hpp and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
- erpc_transport.hpp file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

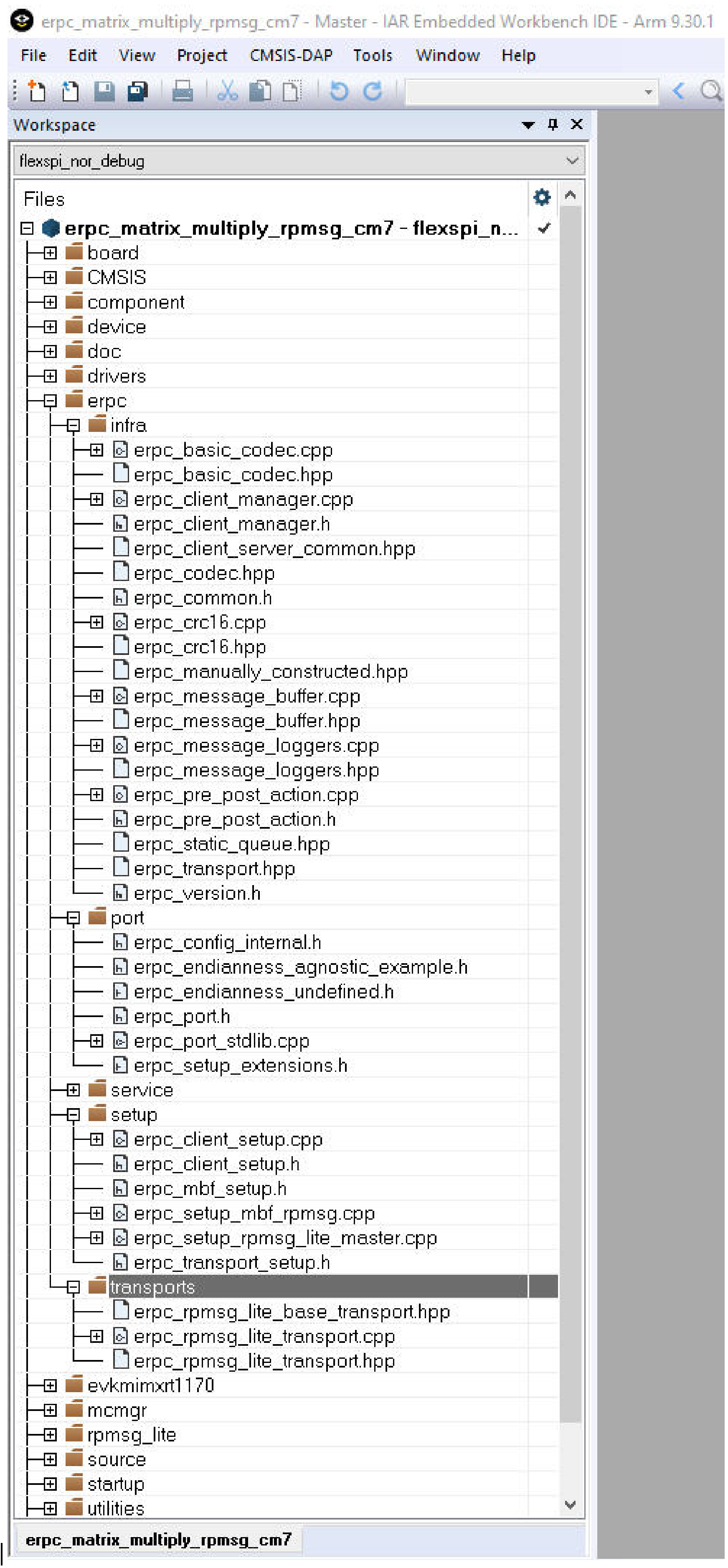
- erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
- erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
- erpc_config_internal.h internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- erpc_client_setup.h and erpc_client_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files needs to be added into the client project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_n...
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
│  ├─ infra
│  │  ├─ erpc_basic_codec.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_basic_codec.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_manager.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_manager.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_server_common.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_codec.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_common.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_crc16.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_crc16.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_buffer.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_buffer.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_loggers.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_message_loggers.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_pre_post_action.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_static_queue.hpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_transport.hpp
│  │  └─ erpc_version.h
│  ├─ port
│  │  ├─ erpc_config_internal.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_endianness_undefined.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_port.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
│  │  └─ erpc_setup_extensions.h
│  ├─ service
│  ├─ setup
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_setup.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_client_setup.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_mbf_setup.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
│  │  ├─ erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp
│  │  └─ erpc_transport_setup.h
│  └─ transports
│     ├─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
│     ├─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
│     └─ erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
├─ rpmsg_lite
├─ source
├─ startup
├─ utilities
```

|

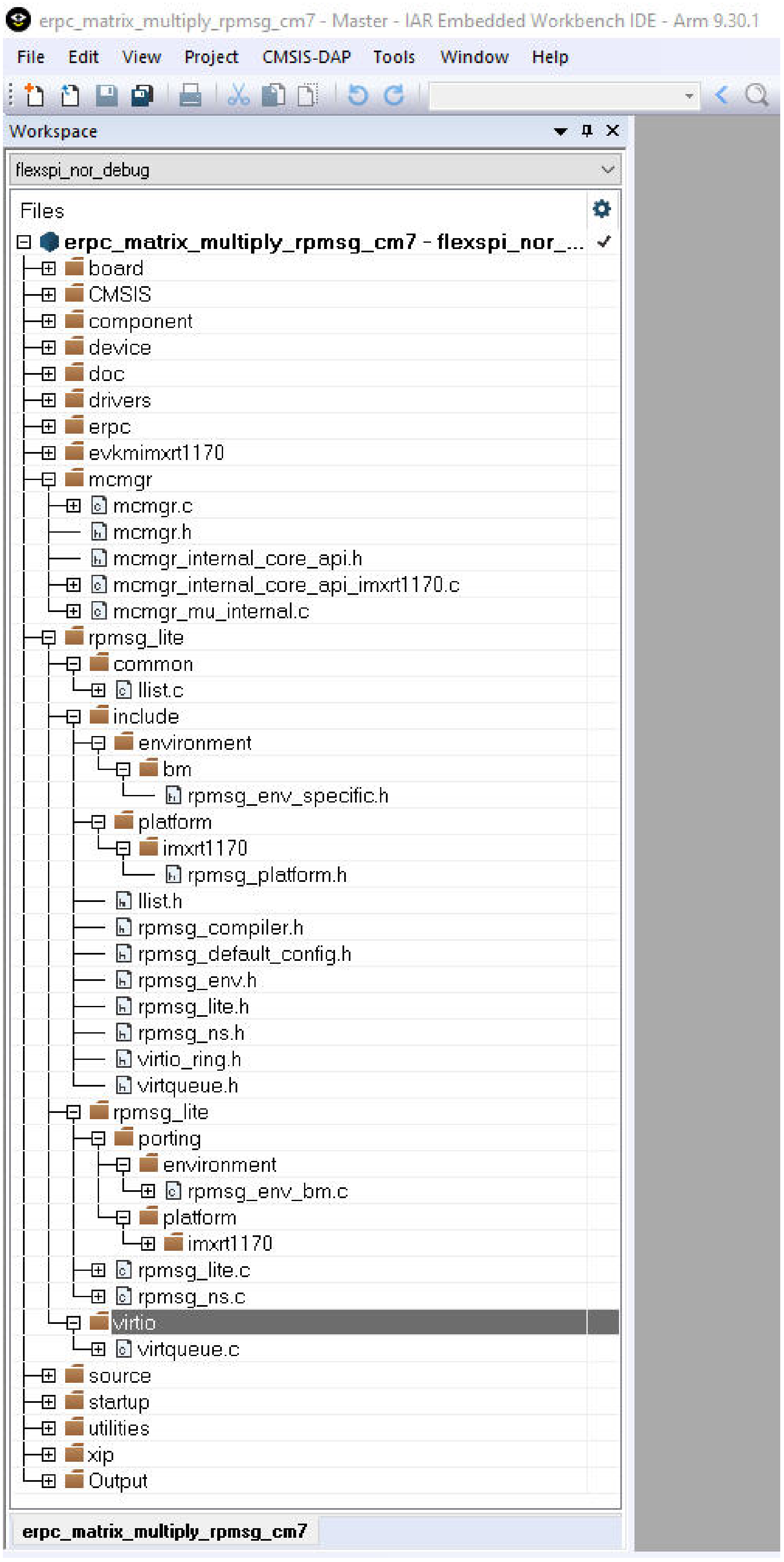
Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_nor_...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
mcmgr.c
mcmgr.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
mcmgr_mu_internal.c
rpmsg_lite
common
llist.c
include
environment
bm
rpmsg_env_specific.h
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_platform.h
llist.h
rpmsg_compiler.h
rpmsg_default_config.h
rpmsg_env.h
rpmsg_lite.h
rpmsg_ns.h
virtio_ring.h
virtqueue.h
rpmsg_lite
porting
environment
rpmsg_env_bm.c
platform
imxrt1170
rpmsg_lite.c
rpmsg_ns.c
virtio
virtqueue.c
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_example/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7

The main_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

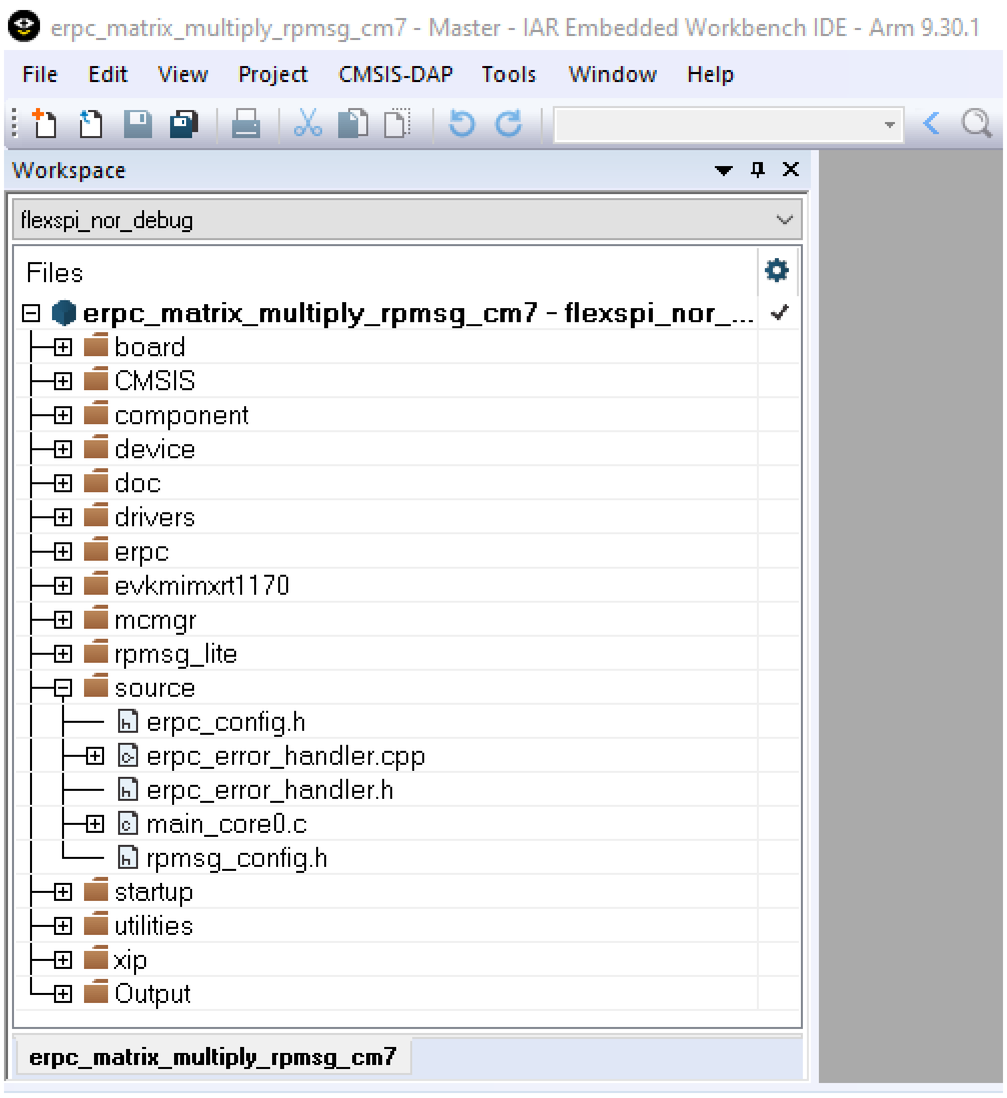
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg



|

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Multiprocessor server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir»/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_server.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Multiprocessor client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/iar/* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code), client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_client.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

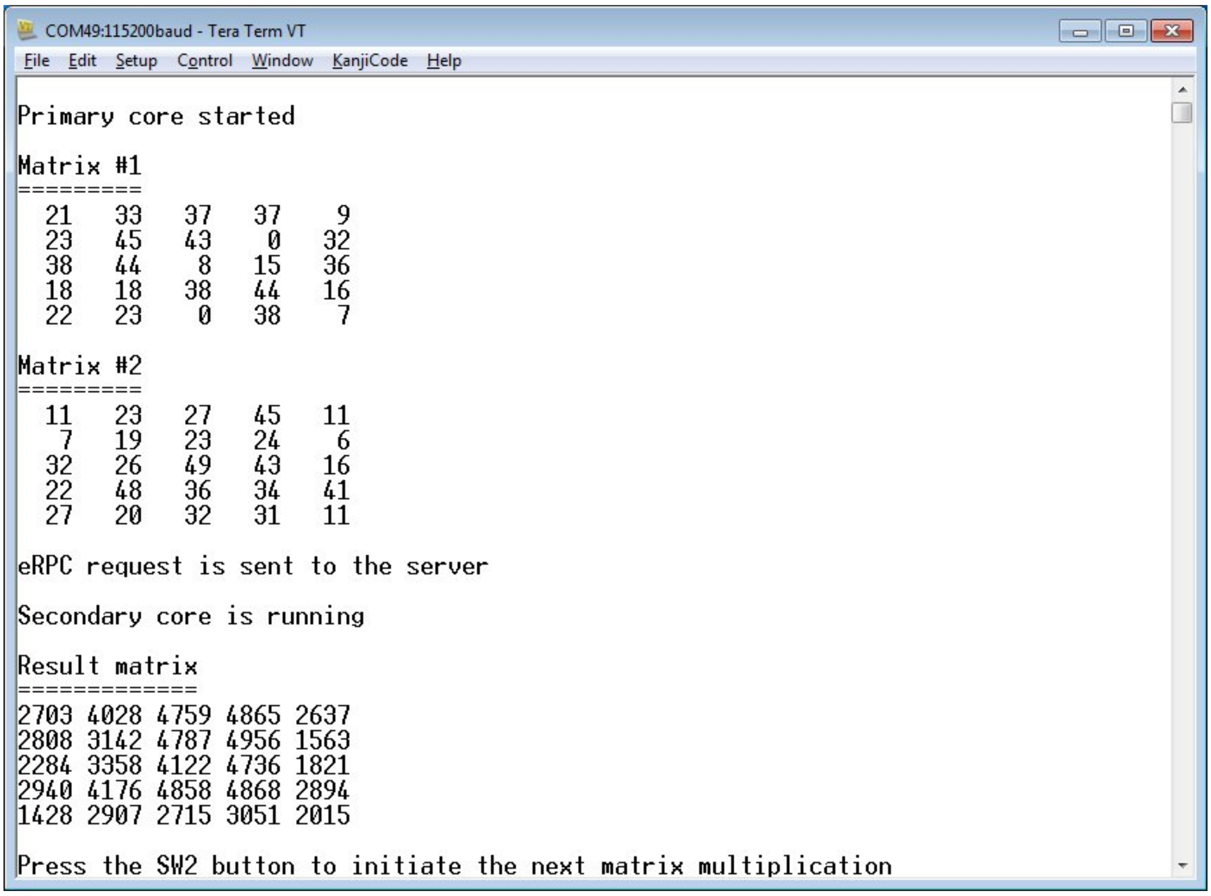
```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor client application

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Running the eRPC application Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/docs* folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:


COM49:115200baud - Tera Term VT
File Edit Setup Control Window KanjiCode Help

```
Primary core started

Matrix #1
=========
  21   33   37   37    9
  23   45   43    0   32
  38   44    8   15   36
  18   18   38   44   16
  22   23    0   38    7

Matrix #2
=========
  11   23   27   45   11
   7   19   23   24    6
  32   26   49   43   16
  22   48   36   34   41
  27   20   32   31   11

eRPC request is sent to the server

Secondary core is running

Result matrix
=============
2703 4028 4759 4865 2637
2808 3142 4787 4956 1563
2284 3358 4122 4736 1821
2940 4176 4858 4868 2894
1428 2907 2715 3051 2015

Press the SW2 button to initiate the next matrix multiplication
```

|

|

For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

eRPC example This section shows how to create an example eRPC application called "Matrix multiply", which implements one eRPC function (matrix multiply) with two function parameters (two matrices). The client-side application calls this eRPC function, and the server side performs the multiplication of received matrices. The server side then returns the result.

For example, use the NXP MIMXRT1170-EVK board as the target dual-core platform, and the IAR Embedded Workbench for ARM (EWARM) as the target IDE for developing the eRPC example.

- The primary core (CM7) runs the eRPC client.
- The secondary core (CM4) runs the eRPC server.
- RPMsg-Lite (Remote Processor Messaging Lite) is used as the eRPC transport layer.

The “Matrix multiply” application can be also run in the multi-processor setup. In other words, the eRPC client running on one SoC comunicates with the eRPC server that runs on anothe SoC, utilizing different transport channels. It is possible to run the board-to-PC example (PC as the eRPC server and a board as the eRPC client, and vice versa) and also the board-to-board example. These multiprocessor examples are prepared for selected boards only.

| Multicore application source and project files | *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_*
| Multiprocessor application source and project files | *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multi*

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<tr

| | eRPC source files | *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/* | | RPMsg-Lite source files | *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/* |

Designing the eRPC application The matrix multiply application is based on calling single eRPC function that takes 2 two-dimensional arrays as input and returns matrix multiplication results as another 2 two-dimensional array. The IDL file syntax supports arrays with the dimension length set by the number only (in the current eRPC implementation). Because of this, a variable is declared in the IDL dedicated to store information about matrix dimension length, and to allow easy maintenance of the user and server code.

For a simple use of the two-dimensional array, the alias name (new type definition) for this data type has is declared in the IDL. Declaring this alias name ensures that the same data type can be used across the client and server applications.

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Creating the IDL file The created IDL file is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s

The created IDL file contains the following code:

```
program erpc_matrix_multiply
/*! This const defines the matrix size. The value has to be the same as the
Matrix array dimension. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
const int32 matrix_size = 5;
/*! This is the matrix array type. The dimension has to be the same as the
matrix size const. Do not forget to re-generate the erpc code once the
matrix size is changed in the erpc file */
type Matrix = int32[matrix_size][matrix_size];
interface MatrixMultiplyService {
erpcMatrixMultiply(in Matrix matrix1, in Matrix matrix2, out Matrix result_matrix) ->
void
}
```

Details:

- The IDL file starts with the program name (*erpc_matrix_multiply*), and this program name is used in the naming of all generated outputs.
- The declaration and definition of the constant variable named *matrix_size* follows next. The *matrix_size* variable is used for passing information about the length of matrix dimensions to the client/server user code.
- The alias name for the two-dimensional array type (*Matrix*) is declared.
- The interface group *MatrixMultiplyService* is located at the end of the IDL file. This interface group contains only one function declaration *erpcMatrixMultiply*.
- As shown above, the function’s declaration contains three parameters of Matrix type: *matrix1* and *matrix2* are input parameters, while *result_matrix* is the output parameter. Additionally, the returned data type is declared as void.

When writing the IDL file, the following order of items is recommended:

1. Program name at the top of the IDL file.
2. New data types and constants declarations.
3. Declarations of interfaces and functions at the end of the IDL file.

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Using the eRPC generator tool

|Windows OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erp
|Linux OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x64

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Linux_x86

| |Mac OS|<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/tools/erpcgen/Mac|

The files for the "Matrix multiply" example are pre-generated and already a part of the application projects. The following section describes how they have been created.

- The easiest way to create the shim code is to copy the erpcgen application to the same folder where the IDL file (*.erpc) is located; then run the following command:

  erpcgen <IDL_file>.erpc

- In the "Matrix multiply" example, the command should look like:

  erpcgen erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc

Additionally, another method to create the shim code is to execute the eRPC application using input commands:

- "-?"/"—help" – Shows supported commands.
- "-o <filePath>"/"—output<filePath>" – Sets the output directory.

For example,

```
<path_to_erpcgen>/erpcgen –o <path_to_output>
<path_to_IDL>/<IDL_file_name>.erpc
```

For the "Matrix multiply" example, when the command is executed from the default erpcgen location, it looks like:

erpcgen –o

../../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service
../../../../../boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/erpc_matrix_mu

In both cases, the following four files are generated into the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service folder.*

- erpc_matrix_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

For multiprocessor examples, the eRPC file and pre-generated files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/serv* folder.

For Linux OS users:

- Do not forget to set the permissions for the eRPC generator application.
- Run the application as ./erpcgen… instead of as erpcgen ….

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Create an eRPC application This section describes a generic way to create a client/server eRPC application:

1. **Design the eRPC application:** Decide which data types are sent between applications, and define functions that send/receive this data.
2. **Create the IDL file:** The IDL file contains information about data types and functions used in an eRPC application, and is written in the IDL language.
3. **Use the eRPC generator tool:** This tool takes an IDL file and generates the shim code for the client and the server-side applications.
4. **Create an eRPC application:**
   1. Create two projects, where one project is for the client side (primary core) and the other project is for the server side (secondary core).
   2. Add generated files for the client application to the client project, and add generated files for the server application to the server project.
   3. Add infrastructure files.
   4. Add user code for client and server applications.
   5. Set the client and server project options.
5. **Run the eRPC application:** Run both the server and the client applications. Make sure that the server has been run before the client request was sent.

A specific example follows in the next section.

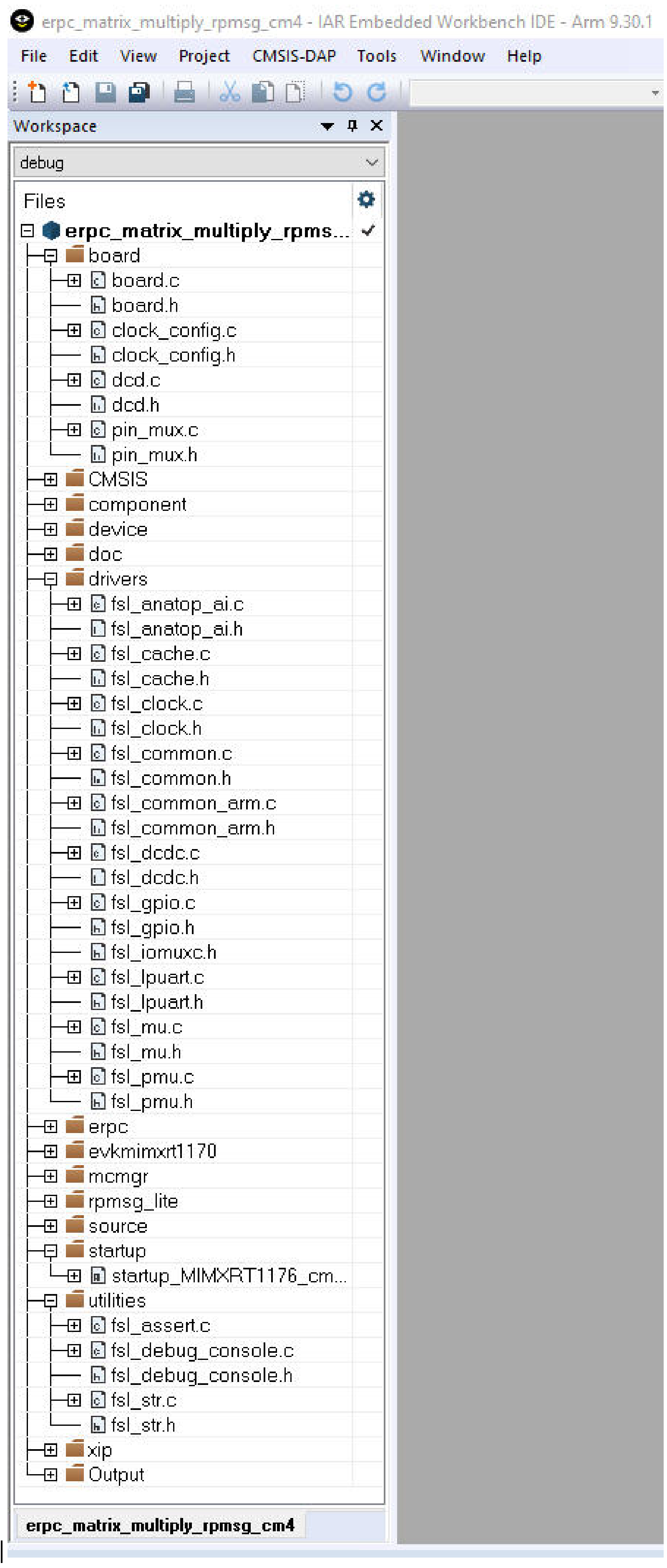
Multicore server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4/iar

The project files for the eRPC server have the _cm4 suffix.

Server project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
  board
    board.c
    board.h
    clock_config.c
    clock_config.h
    dcd.c
    dcd.h
    pin_mux.c
    pin_mux.h
  CMSIS
  component
  device
  doc
  drivers
    fsl_anatop_ai.c
    fsl_anatop_ai.h
    fsl_cache.c
    fsl_cache.h
    fsl_clock.c
    fsl_clock.h
    fsl_common.c
    fsl_common.h
    fsl_common_arm.c
    fsl_common_arm.h
    fsl_dcdc.c
    fsl_dcdc.h
    fsl_gpio.c
    fsl_gpio.h
    fsl_iomuxc.h
    fsl_lpuart.c
    fsl_lpuart.h
    fsl_mu.c
    fsl_mu.h
    fsl_pmu.c
    fsl_pmu.h
  erpc
  evkmimxrt1170
  mcmgr
  rpmsg_lite
  source
  startup
    startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
  utilities
    fsl_assert.c
    fsl_debug_console.c
    fsl_debug_console.h
    fsl_str.c
    fsl_str.h
  xip
  Output
```

|

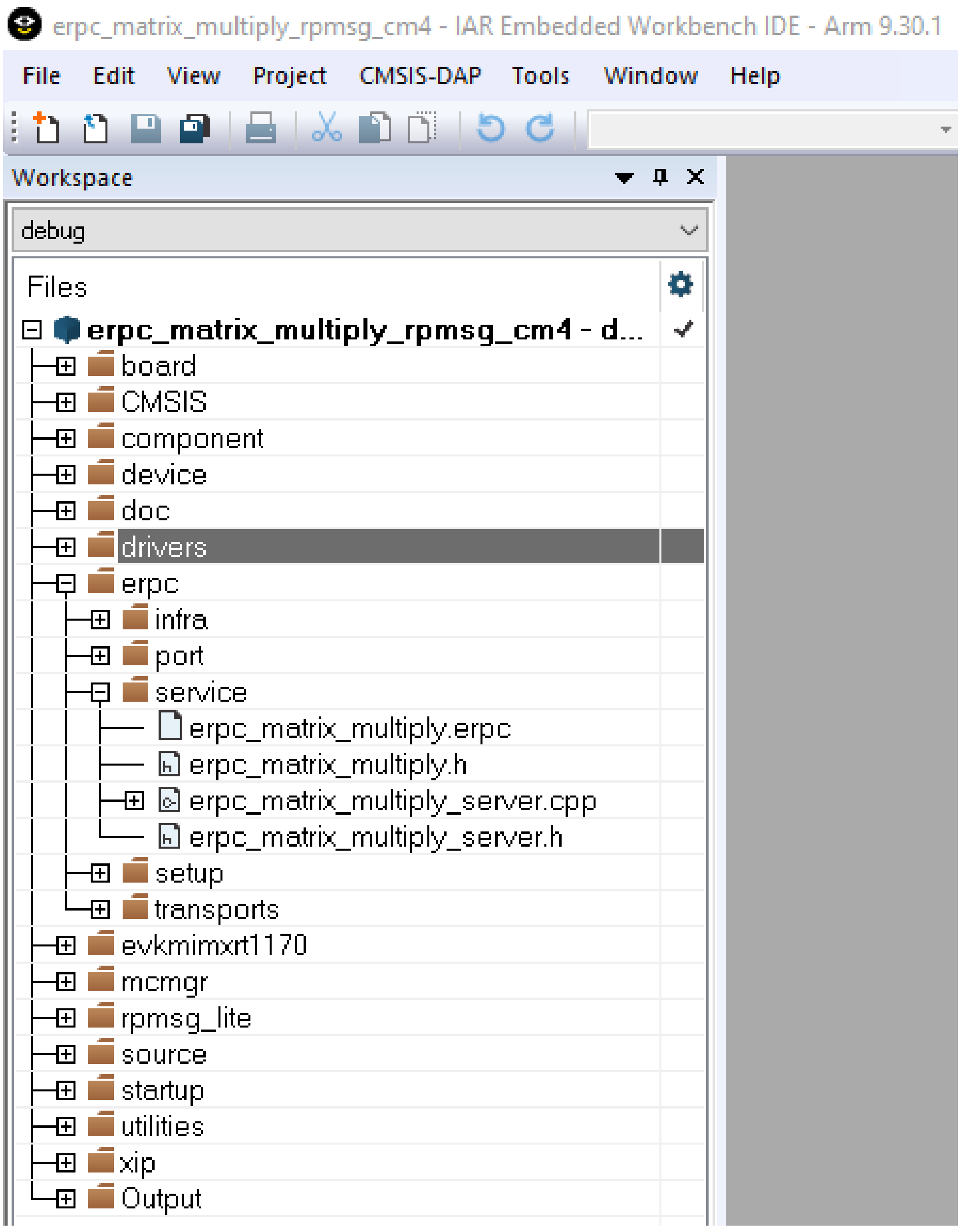
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server related generated files The server-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp

The server-related generated files contain the shim code for functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These files also contain functions for the identification of client requested functions, data deserialization, calling requested function's implementations, and data serialization and return, if requested by the client. These shim code files can be found in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/s


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - d...
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
│  ├─ infra
│  ├─ port
│  ├─ service
│  │  ├── erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc
│  │  ├── erpc_matrix_multiply.h
│  │  ├─ erpc_matrix_multiply_server.cpp
│  │  └── erpc_matrix_multiply_server.h
│  ├─ setup
│  └─ transports
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
├─ rpmsg_lite
├─ source
├─ startup
├─ utilities
├─ xip
└─ Output
```

|

|

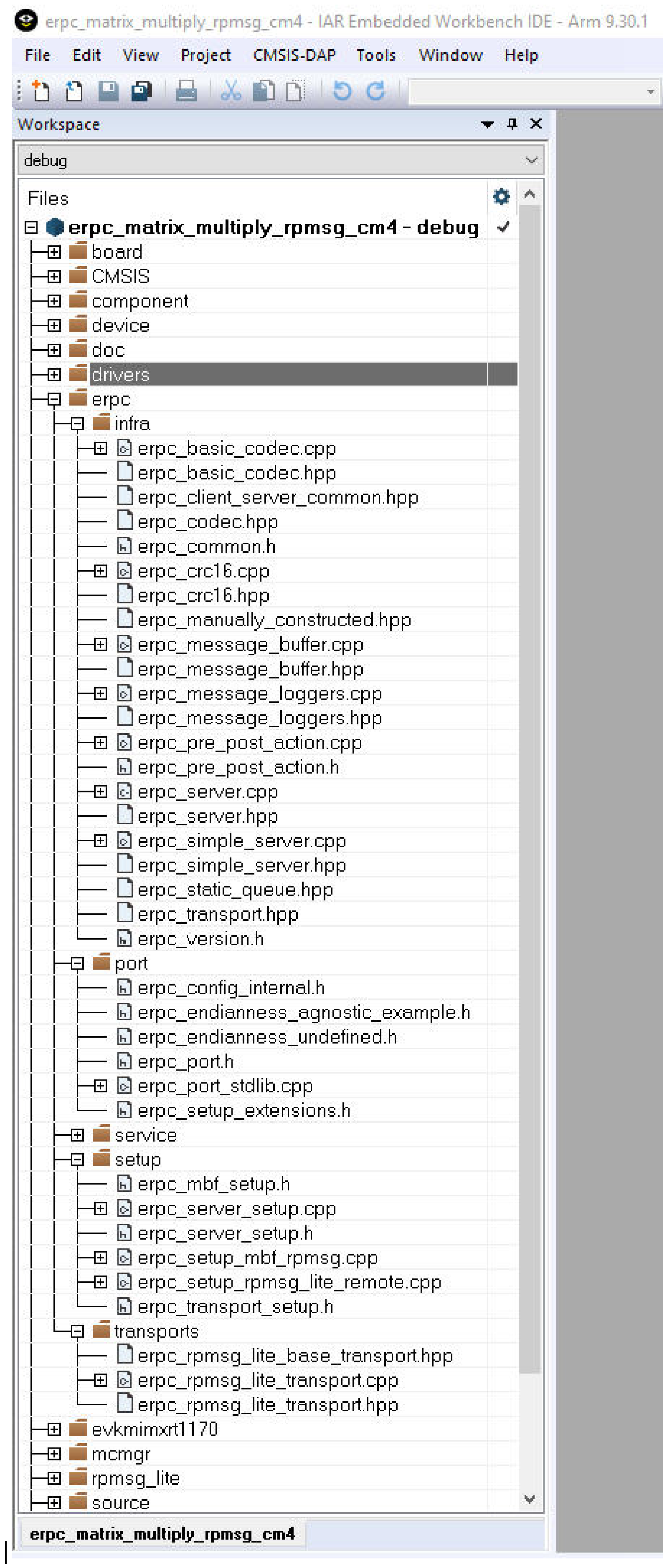
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the *C/C++* language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.
  - Four files, erpc_server.hpp, erpc_server.cpp, erpc_simple_server.hpp, and erpc_simple_server.cpp, are used for running the eRPC server on the server-side applications. The simple server is currently the only implementation of the server, and its role is to catch client requests, identify and call requested functions, and send data back when requested.
  - Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
  - The erpc_common.hpp file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
  - The erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
  - Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.h and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
  - The erpc_transport.h file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.
- The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.
  - erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
  - erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
  - erpc_config_internal.h internal erpc configuration file.
- The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.
  - The erpc_server_setup.h and erpc_server_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
  - The erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow the C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
  - The erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.
- The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions in the setup folder.
  - RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files need to be added into the server project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
├─⊞ board
├─⊞ CMSIS
├─⊞ component
├─⊞ device
├─⊞ doc
├─⊞ drivers
├─⊟ erpc
│  ├─⊟ infra
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_basic_codec.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_basic_codec.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_client_server_common.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_codec.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_common.h
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_crc16.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_crc16.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_message_buffer.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_message_buffer.hpp
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_message_loggers.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_message_loggers.hpp
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_pre_post_action.h
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_server.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_server.hpp
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_simple_server.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_simple_server.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_static_queue.hpp
│  │  ├── erpc_transport.hpp
│  │  └── erpc_version.h
│  ├─⊟ port
│  │  ├── erpc_config_internal.h
│  │  ├── erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
│  │  ├── erpc_endianness_undefined.h
│  │  ├── erpc_port.h
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
│  │  └── erpc_setup_extensions.h
│  ├─⊞ service
│  ├─⊟ setup
│  │  ├── erpc_mbf_setup.h
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_server_setup.cpp
│  │  ├── erpc_server_setup.h
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
│  │  ├─⊞ erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_remote.cpp
│  │  └── erpc_transport_setup.h
│  └─⊟ transports
│     ├── erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
│     ├─⊞ erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
│     └── erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
├─⊞ evkmimxrt1170
├─⊞ mcmgr
├─⊞ rpmsg_lite
├─⊞ source
```

|

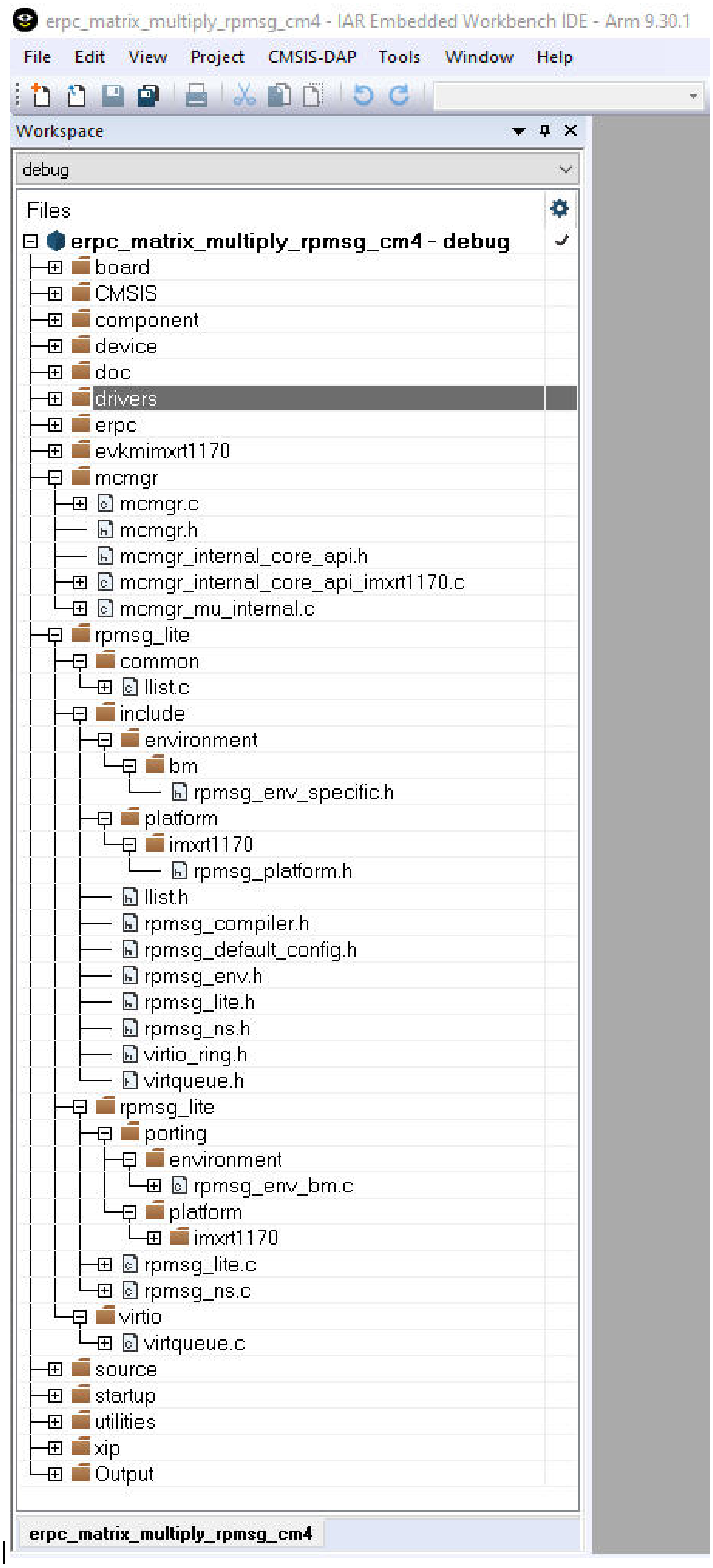
Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
│  ├─ mcmgr.c
│  ├─ mcmgr.h
│  ├─ mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
│  ├─ mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
│  └─ mcmgr_mu_internal.c
├─ rpmsg_lite
│  ├─ common
│  │  └─ llist.c
│  ├─ include
│  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  └─ bm
│  │  │     └─ rpmsg_env_specific.h
│  │  ├─ platform
│  │  │  └─ imxrt1170
│  │  │     └─ rpmsg_platform.h
│  │  ├─ llist.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_compiler.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_default_config.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_env.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_lite.h
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_ns.h
│  │  ├─ virtio_ring.h
│  │  └─ virtqueue.h
│  ├─ rpmsg_lite
│  │  ├─ porting
│  │  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  │  └─ rpmsg_env_bm.c
│  │  │  └─ platform
│  │  │     └─ imxrt1170
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_lite.c
│  │  └─ rpmsg_ns.c
│  └─ virtio
│     └─ virtqueue.c
├─ source
├─ startup
├─ utilities
├─ xip
└─ Output
```

|

Parent topic: Multicore server application

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_core1.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm4

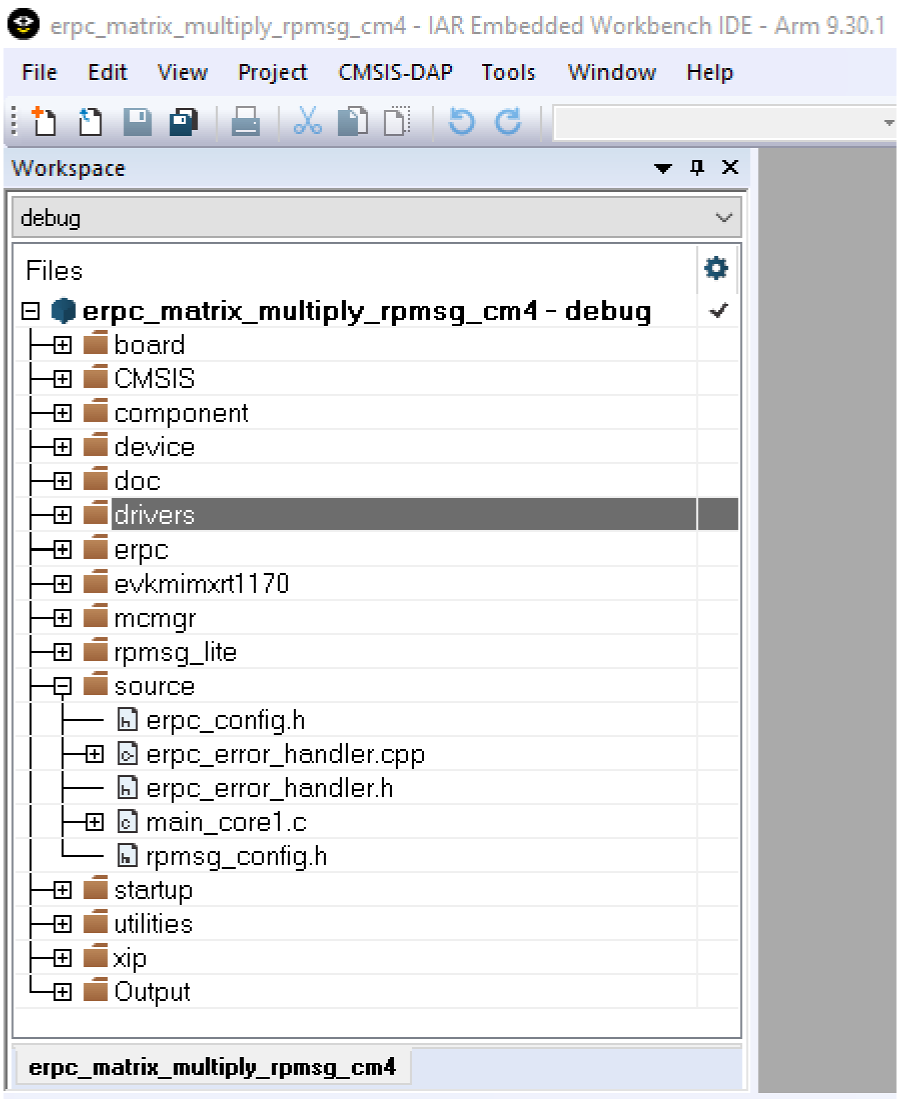
The main_core1.c file contains two functions:

- The **main()** function contains the code for the target board and eRPC server initialization. After the initialization, the matrix multiply service is added and the eRPC server waits for client's requests in the while loop.
- The **erpcMatrixMultiply()** function is the user implementation of the eRPC function defined in the IDL file.
- There is the possibility to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in the erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(const Matrix *matrix1, const Matrix *matrix2, Matrix *result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_remote_init(src, dst, (void*)startupData,
  ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID, SignalReady, NULL);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server);
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/ erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg* folder.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
debug
Files

erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4 - debug
- board
- CMSIS
- component
- device
- doc
- drivers
- erpc
- evkmimxrt1170
- mcmgr
- rpmsg_lite
- source
  - erpc_config.h
  - erpc_error_handler.cpp
  - erpc_error_handler.h
  - main_core1.c
  - rpmsg_config.h
- startup
- utilities
- xip
- Output

erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm4

|

|

Parent topic: Multicore server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

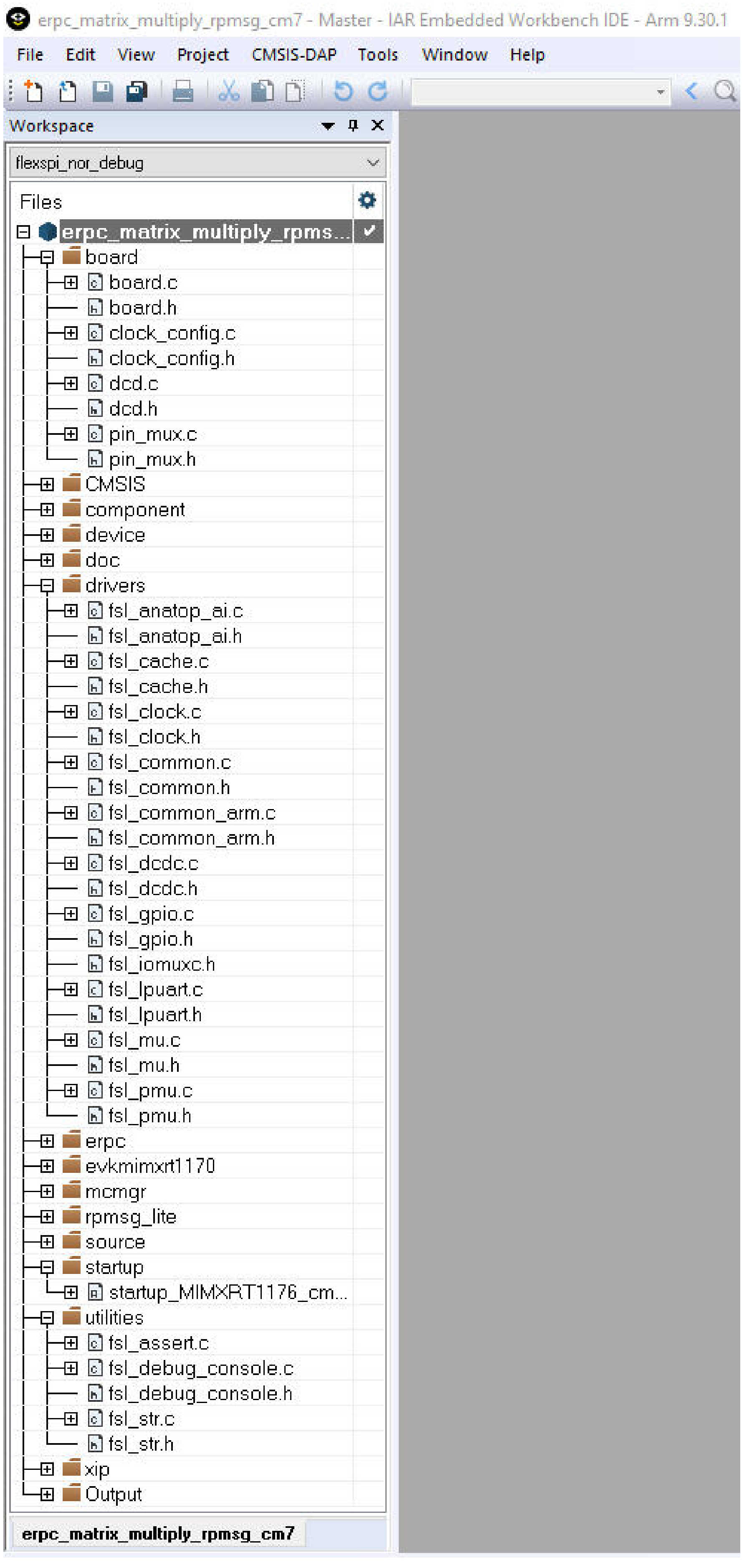
Multicore client application The “Matrix multiply” eRPC client project is located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7/iar

Project files for the eRPC client have the _cm7 suffix.

Client project basic source files The startup files, board-related settings, peripheral drivers, and utilities belong to the basic project source files and form the skeleton of all MCUXpresso SDK applications. These source files are located in the following folders:

- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/devices/<device>*
- *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multicore_examples/<example_name>/*


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File
Edit
View
Project
CMSIS-DAP
Tools
Window
Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpms...
board
board.c
board.h
clock_config.c
clock_config.h
dcd.c
dcd.h
pin_mux.c
pin_mux.h
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
fsl_anatop_ai.c
fsl_anatop_ai.h
fsl_cache.c
fsl_cache.h
fsl_clock.c
fsl_clock.h
fsl_common.c
fsl_common.h
fsl_common_arm.c
fsl_common_arm.h
fsl_dcdc.c
fsl_dcdc.h
fsl_gpio.c
fsl_gpio.h
fsl_iomuxc.h
fsl_lpuart.c
fsl_lpuart.h
fsl_mu.c
fsl_mu.h
fsl_pmu.c
fsl_pmu.h
erpc
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
startup_MIMXRT1176_cm...
utilities
fsl_assert.c
fsl_debug_console.c
fsl_debug_console.h
fsl_str.c
fsl_str.h
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

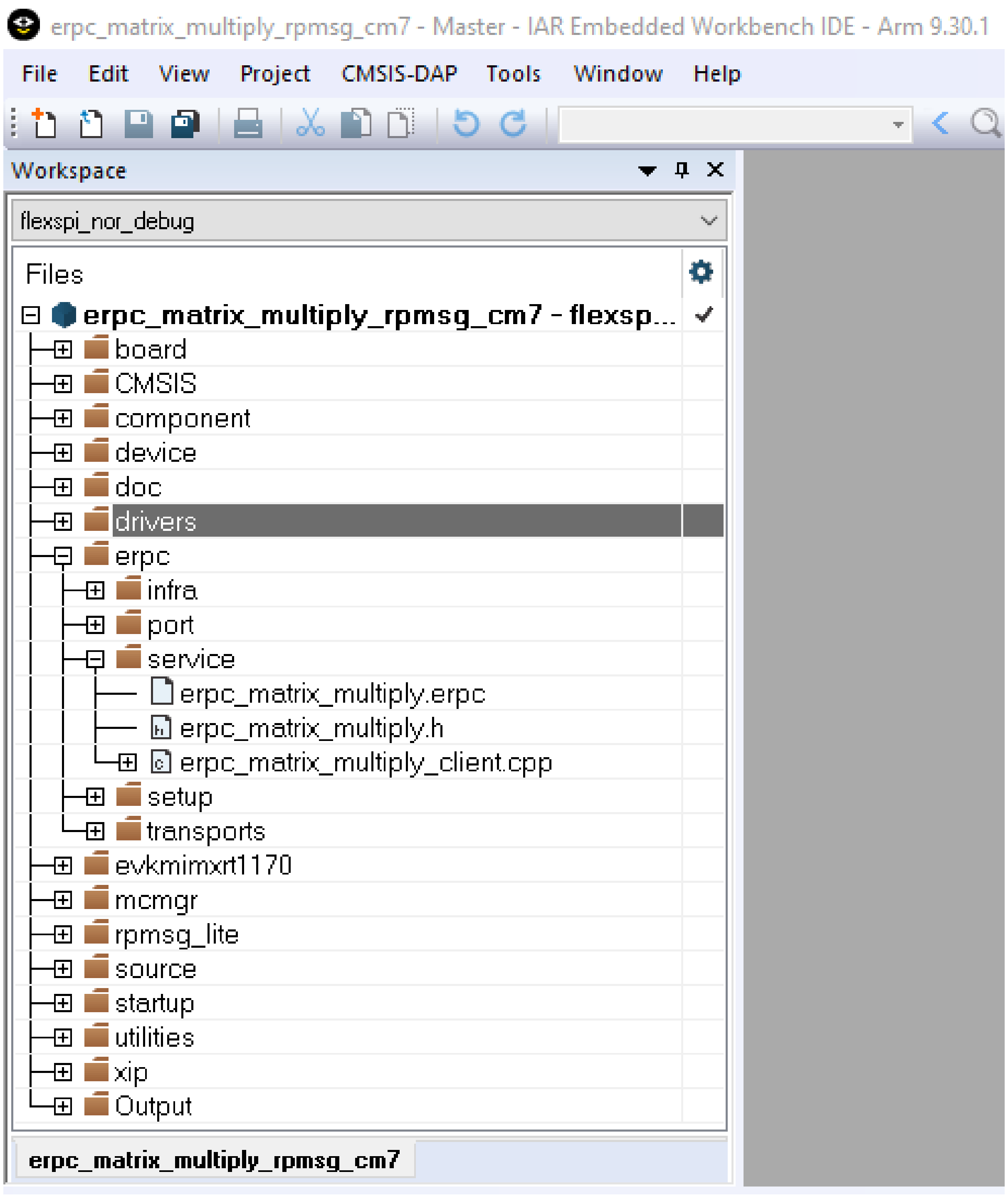
|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client-related generated files The client-related generated files are:

- erpc_matric_multiply.h
- erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp

These files contain the shim code for the functions and data types declared in the IDL file. These functions also call methods for codec initialization, data serialization, performing eRPC requests, and de-serializing outputs into expected data structures (if return values are expected). These shim code files can be found in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_common/erpc_matrix_multiply/service/* folder.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexsp...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
port
service
erpc_matrix_multiply.erpc
erpc_matrix_multiply.h
erpc_matrix_multiply_client.cpp
setup
transports
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
xip
Output
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client infrastructure files The eRPC infrastructure files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/erpc/erpc_c

The **erpc_c** folder contains files for creating eRPC client and server applications in the C/C++ language. These files are distributed into subfolders.

- The **infra** subfolder contains C++ infrastructure code used to build server and client applications.

- Two files, erpc_client_manager.h and erpc_client_manager.cpp, are used for managing the client-side application. The main purpose of the client files is to create, perform, and release eRPC requests.
- Three files (erpc_codec.hpp, erpc_basic_codec.hpp, and erpc_basic_codec.cpp) are used for codecs. Currently, the basic codec is the initial and only implementation of the codecs.
- erpc_common.h file is used for common eRPC definitions, typedefs, and enums.
- erpc_manually_constructed.hpp file is used for allocating static storage for the used objects.
- Message buffer files are used for storing serialized data: erpc_message_buffer.hpp and erpc_message_buffer.cpp.
- erpc_transport.hpp file defines the abstract interface for transport layer.

The **port** subfolder contains the eRPC porting layer to adapt to different environments.

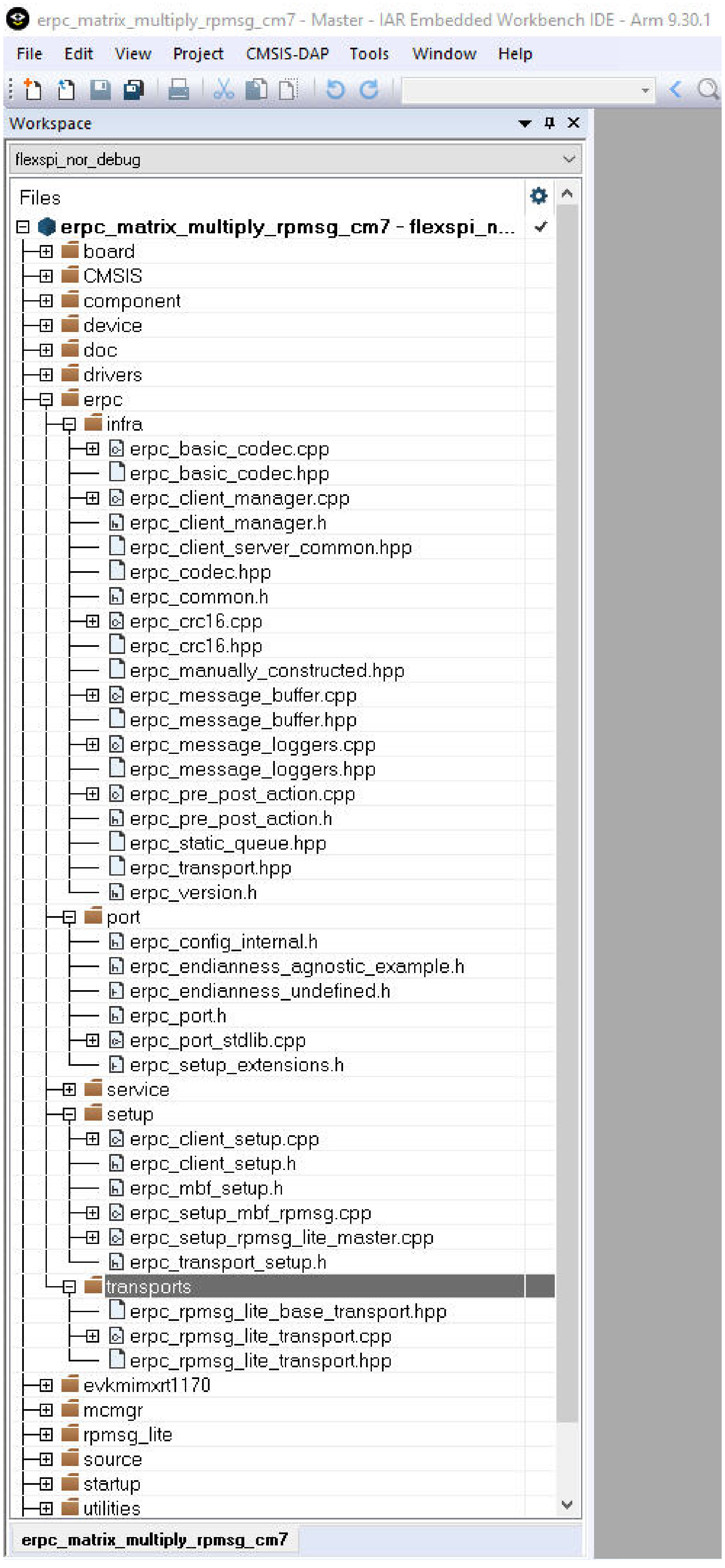
- erpc_port.h file contains definition of erpc_malloc() and erpc_free() functions.
- erpc_port_stdlib.cpp file ensures adaptation to stdlib.
- erpc_config_internal.h internal eRPC configuration file.

The **setup** subfolder contains a set of plain C APIs that wrap the C++ infrastructure, providing client and server init and deinit routines that greatly simplify eRPC usage in C-based projects. No knowledge of C++ is required to use these APIs.

- erpc_client_setup.h and erpc_client_setup.cpp files needs to be added into the "Matrix multiply" example project to demonstrate the use of C-wrapped functions in this example.
- erpc_transport_setup.h and erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow C-wrapped function for transport layer setup.
- erpc_mbf_setup.h and erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp files needs to be added into the project in order to allow message buffer factory usage.

The **transports** subfolder contains transport classes for the different methods of communication supported by eRPC. Some transports are applicable only to host PCs, while others are applicable only to embedded or multicore systems. Most transports have corresponding client and server setup functions, in the setup folder.

- RPMsg-Lite is used as the transport layer for the communication between cores, erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp, erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp, and erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp files needs to be added into the client project.


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_n...
board
CMSIS
component
device
doc
drivers
erpc
infra
erpc_basic_codec.cpp
erpc_basic_codec.hpp
erpc_client_manager.cpp
erpc_client_manager.h
erpc_client_server_common.hpp
erpc_codec.hpp
erpc_common.h
erpc_crc16.cpp
erpc_crc16.hpp
erpc_manually_constructed.hpp
erpc_message_buffer.cpp
erpc_message_buffer.hpp
erpc_message_loggers.cpp
erpc_message_loggers.hpp
erpc_pre_post_action.cpp
erpc_pre_post_action.h
erpc_static_queue.hpp
erpc_transport.hpp
erpc_version.h
port
erpc_config_internal.h
erpc_endianness_agnostic_example.h
erpc_endianness_undefined.h
erpc_port.h
erpc_port_stdlib.cpp
erpc_setup_extensions.h
service
setup
erpc_client_setup.cpp
erpc_client_setup.h
erpc_mbf_setup.h
erpc_setup_mbf_rpmsg.cpp
erpc_setup_rpmsg_lite_master.cpp
erpc_transport_setup.h
transports
erpc_rpmsg_lite_base_transport.hpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.cpp
erpc_rpmsg_lite_transport.hpp
evkmimxrt1170
mcmgr
rpmsg_lite
source
startup
utilities
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7

|

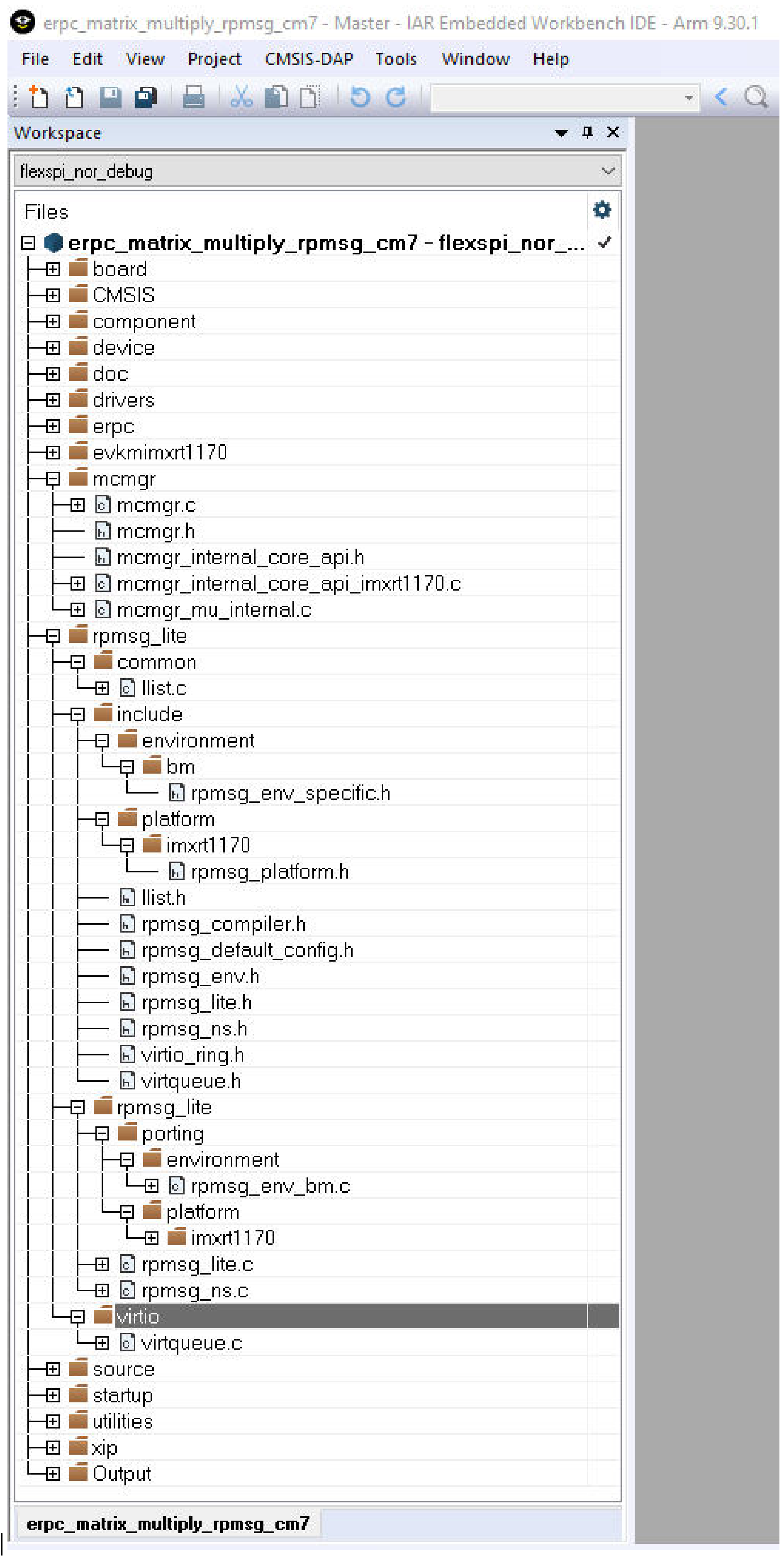
Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client multicore infrastructure files Because of the RPMsg-Lite (transport layer), it is also necessary to include RPMsg-Lite related files, which are in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/rpmsg_lite/

The multicore example applications also use the Multicore Manager software library to control the secondary core startup and shutdown. These source files are located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/middleware/multicore/mcmgr/


erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - Master - IAR Embedded Workbench IDE - Arm 9.30.1
File Edit View Project CMSIS-DAP Tools Window Help
Workspace
flexspi_nor_debug
Files

```
erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg_cm7 - flexspi_nor_...
├─ board
├─ CMSIS
├─ component
├─ device
├─ doc
├─ drivers
├─ erpc
├─ evkmimxrt1170
├─ mcmgr
│  ├─ mcmgr.c
│  ├── mcmgr.h
│  ├── mcmgr_internal_core_api.h
│  ├─ mcmgr_internal_core_api_imxrt1170.c
│  └─ mcmgr_mu_internal.c
├─ rpmsg_lite
│  ├─ common
│  │  └─ llist.c
│  ├─ include
│  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  └─ bm
│  │  │     └── rpmsg_env_specific.h
│  │  ├─ platform
│  │  │  └─ imxrt1170
│  │  │     └── rpmsg_platform.h
│  │  ├── llist.h
│  │  ├── rpmsg_compiler.h
│  │  ├── rpmsg_default_config.h
│  │  ├── rpmsg_env.h
│  │  ├── rpmsg_lite.h
│  │  ├── rpmsg_ns.h
│  │  ├── virtio_ring.h
│  │  └── virtqueue.h
│  ├─ rpmsg_lite
│  │  ├─ porting
│  │  │  ├─ environment
│  │  │  │  └─ rpmsg_env_bm.c
│  │  │  └─ platform
│  │  │     └─ imxrt1170
│  │  ├─ rpmsg_lite.c
│  │  └─ rpmsg_ns.c
│  └─ virtio
│     └─ virtqueue.c
├─ source
├─ startup
├─ utilities
├─ xip
└─ Output
```

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the main_core0.c file, located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_example/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg/cm7

The main_core0.c file contains the code for target board and eRPC initialization.

- After initialization, the secondary core is released from reset.
- When the secondary core is ready, the primary core initializes two matrix variables.
- The erpcMatrixMultiply eRPC function is called to issue the eRPC request and get the result.

It is possible to write the application-specific eRPC error handler. The eRPC error handler of the matrix multiply application is implemented in erpc_error_handler.h and erpc_error_handler.cpp files.

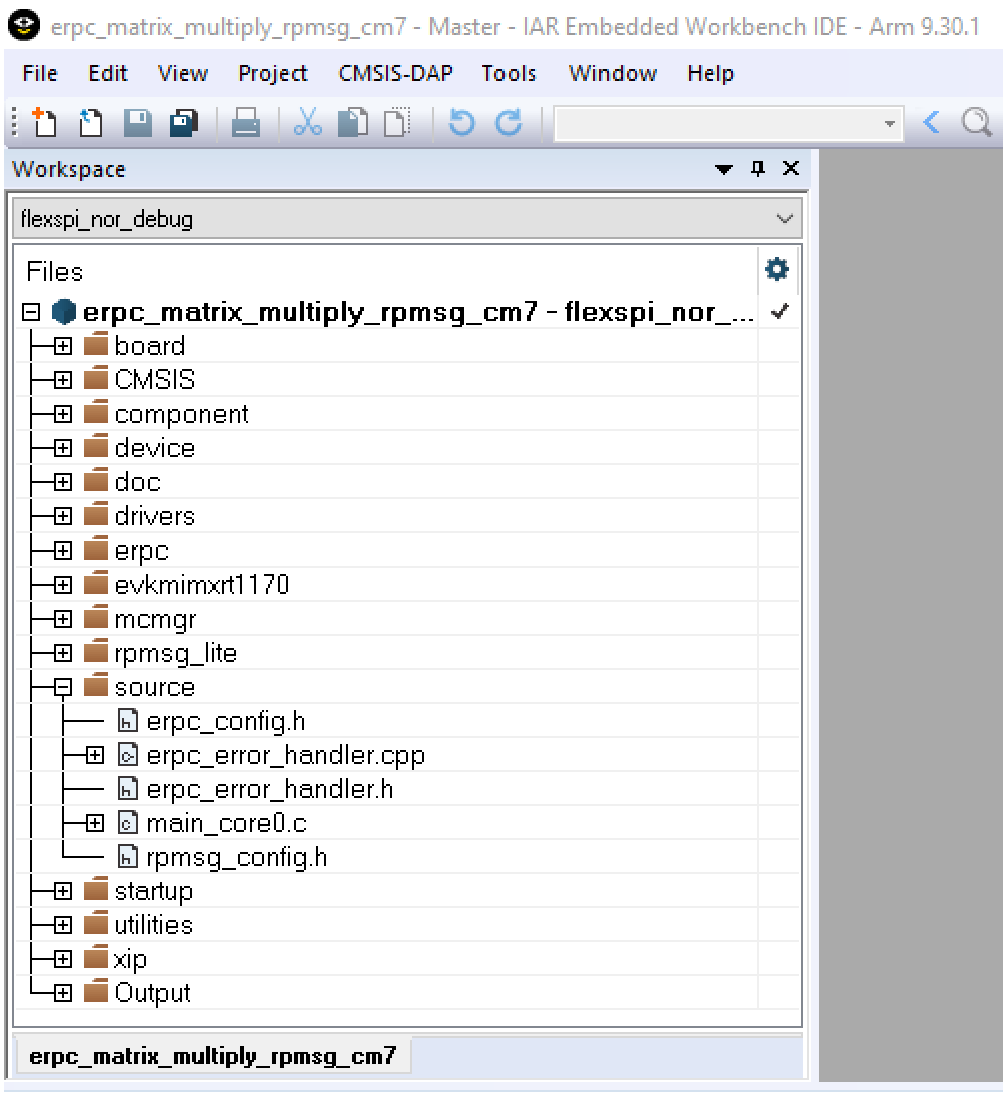
The matrix multiplication can be issued repeatedly, when pressing a software board button.

The eRPC-relevant code is captured in the following code snippet:

```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* RPMsg-Lite transport layer initialization */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_rpmsg_lite_master_init(src, dst,
ERPC_TRANSPORT_RPMSG_LITE_LINK_ID);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_rpmsg_init(transport);
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Except for the application main file, there are configuration files for the RPMsg-Lite (rpmsg_config.h) and eRPC (erpc_config.h), located in the following folder:

<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/evkmimxrt1170/multicore_examples/erpc_matrix_multiply_rpmsg



|

|

Parent topic: Multicore client application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Multiprocessor server application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC server project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir»/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/ erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires server-related generated files (server shim code), server infrastructure files, and the server user code. There is no need for server multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_slave.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_(d)spi_slave_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Server user code The server's user code is stored in the main_server.c file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_server_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

```
/* erpcMatrixMultiply function user implementation */
void erpcMatrixMultiply(Matrix matrix1, Matrix matrix2, Matrix result_matrix)
{
  ...
}
int main()
{
  ...
  /* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
  erpc_transport_t transport;
  transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
  ...
  /* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
  erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
  message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
  ...
  /* eRPC server side initialization */
  erpc_server_t server;
  server = erpc_server_init(transport, message_buffer_factory);
  ...
  /* Adding the service to the server */
  erpc_service_t service = create_MatrixMultiplyService_service();
  erpc_add_service_to_server(server, service);
  ...
  while (1)
  {
    /* Process eRPC requests */
    erpc_status_t status = erpc_server_poll(server)
    /* handle error status */
    if (status != kErpcStatus_Success)
    {
      /* print error description */
      erpc_error_handler(status, 0);
      ...
    }
    ...
  }
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Multiprocessor client application The "Matrix multiply" eRPC client project for multiprocessor applications is located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/iar/* folder.

Most of the multiprocessor application setup is the same as for the multicore application. The multiprocessor server application requires client-related generated files (server shim code), client infrastructure files, and the client user code. There is no need for client multicore infrastructure files (MCMGR and RPMsg-Lite). The RPMsg-Lite transport layer is replaced either by SPI or UART transports. The following table shows the required transport-related files per each transport type.

|SPI|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_(d)spi_master.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/ erpc_(d)spi_master_transport.cpp

| |UART|<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/setup/erpc_setup_uart_cmsis.cpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.hpp

<eRPC base directory>/erpc_c/transports/erpc_uart_cmsis_transport.cpp

|

Client user code The client's user code is stored in the `main_client.c` file, located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/multiprocessor_examples/erpc_client_matrix_multiply_<transport_layer>/* folder.

The eRPC-relevant code with UART as a transport is captured in the following code snippet:

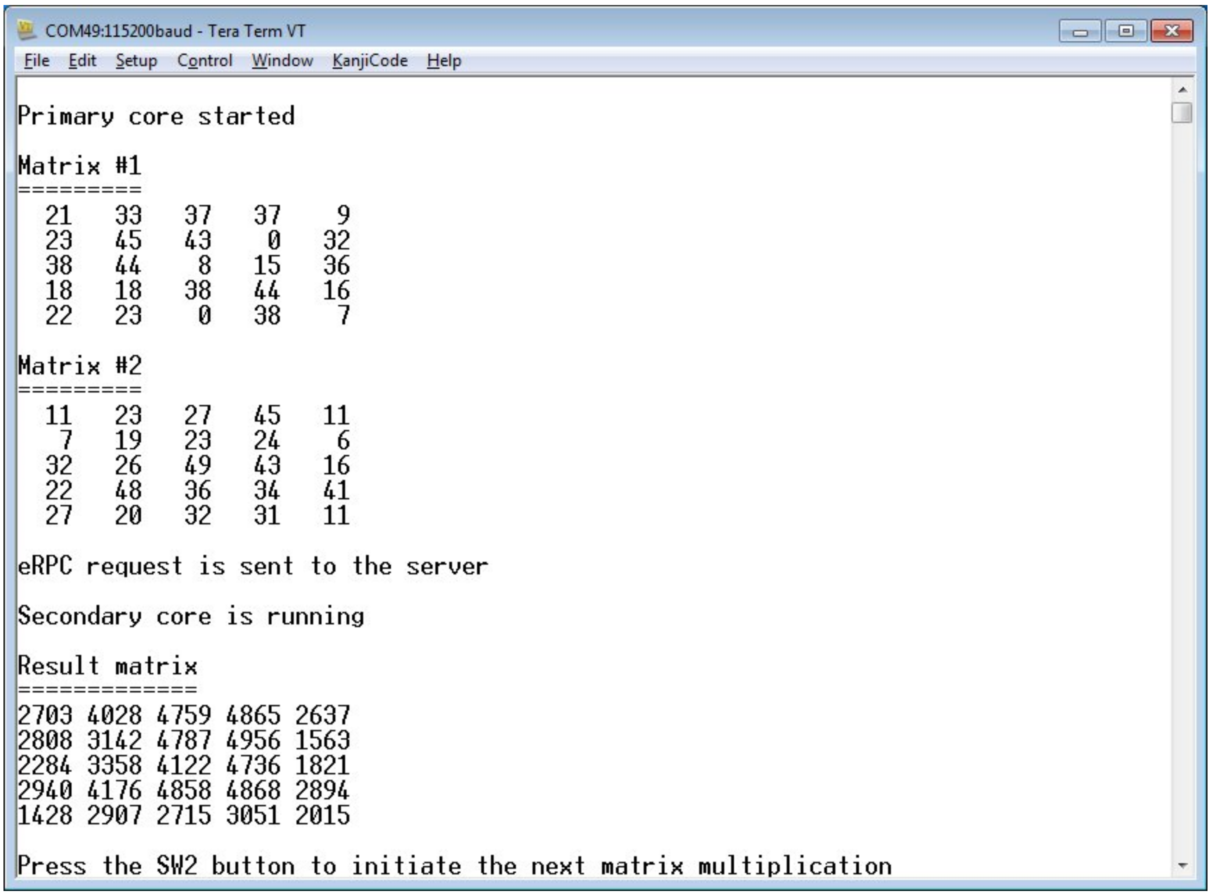
```
...
extern bool g_erpc_error_occurred;
...
/* Declare matrix arrays */
Matrix matrix1 = {0}, matrix2 = {0}, result_matrix = {0};
...
/* UART transport layer initialization, ERPC_DEMO_UART is the structure of CMSIS UART driver␣
↪operations */
erpc_transport_t transport;
transport = erpc_transport_cmsis_uart_init((void *)&ERPC_DEMO_UART);
...
/* MessageBufferFactory initialization */
erpc_mbf_t message_buffer_factory;
message_buffer_factory = erpc_mbf_dynamic_init();
...
/* eRPC client side initialization */
erpc_client_t client;
client = erpc_client_init(transport,message_buffer_factory);
...
/* Set default error handler */
erpc_client_set_error_handler(client, erpc_error_handler);
...
while (1)
{
  /* Invoke the erpcMatrixMultiply function */
  erpcMatrixMultiply(matrix1, matrix2, result_matrix);
  ...
  /* Check if some error occured in eRPC */
  if (g_erpc_error_occurred)
  {
    /* Exit program loop */
    break;
  }
  ...
}
```

Parent topic: Multiprocessor client application

Parent topic: Multiprocessor server application

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Running the eRPC application Follow the instructions in *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* (document MCUXSDKGSUG) (located in the *<MCUXpressoSDK_install_dir>/docs* folder), to load both the primary and the secondary core images into the on-chip memory, and then effectively debug the dual-core application. After the application is running, the serial console should look like:


COM49:115200baud - Tera Term VT
File Edit Setup Control Window KanjiCode Help

```
Primary core started

Matrix #1
=========
  21   33   37   37    9
  23   45   43    0   32
  38   44    8   15   36
  18   18   38   44   16
  22   23    0   38    7

Matrix #2
=========
  11   23   27   45   11
   7   19   23   24    6
  32   26   49   43   16
  22   48   36   34   41
  27   20   32   31   11

eRPC request is sent to the server

Secondary core is running

Result matrix
=============
2703 4028 4759 4865 2637
2808 3142 4787 4956 1563
2284 3358 4122 4736 1821
2940 4176 4858 4868 2894
1428 2907 2715 3051 2015

Press the SW2 button to initiate the next matrix multiplication
```

|

|

For multiprocessor applications that are running between PC and the target evaluation board or between two boards, follow the instructions in the accompanied example readme files that provide details about the proper board setup and the PC side setup (Python).

Parent topic:*Create an eRPC application*

Parent topic:*eRPC example*

Other uses for an eRPC implementation The eRPC implementation is generic, and its use is not limited to just embedded applications. When creating an eRPC application outside the embedded world, the same principles apply. For example, this manual can be used to create an eRPC application for a PC running the Linux operating system. Based on the used type of transport medium, existing transport layers can be used, or new transport layers can be implemented.

For more information and erpc updates see the github.com/EmbeddedRPC.

Note about the source code in the document Example code shown in this document has the following copyright and BSD-3-Clause license:

Changelog eRPC All notable changes to this project will be documented in this file.

The format is based on Keep a Changelog, and this project adheres to Semantic Versioning.

Unreleased

Added

Fixed

- Python code of the eRPC infrastructure was updated to match the proper python code style, add type annotations and improve readability.

1.14.0

Added

- Added Cmake/Kconfig support.
- Made java code jdk11 compliant, GitHub PR #432.
- Added imxrt1186 support into mu transport layer.
- erpcgen: Added assert for listType before usage, GitHub PR #406.

Fixed

- eRPC: Sources reformatted.
- erpc: Fixed typo in semaphore get (mutex -> semaphore), and write it can fail in case of timeout, GitHub PR #446.
- erpc: Free the arbitrated client token from client manager, GitHub PR #444.

- erpc: Fixed Makefile, install the erpc_simple_server header, GitHub PR #447.
- erpc_python: Fixed possible AttributeError and OSError on calling TCPTransport.close(), GitHub PR #438.
- Examples and tests consolidated.

1.13.0

Added

- erpc: Add BSD-3 license to endianness agnostic files, GitHub PR #417.
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related transports (zephyr_uart, zephyr_mbox).
- eRPC: Add new Zephyr-related examples.

Fixed

- eRPC,erpcgen: Fixing/improving markdown files, GitHub PR #395.
- eRPC: Fix Python client TCPTransports not being able to close, GitHub PR #390.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Align switch brackets, GitHub PR #396.
- erpc: Fix zephyr uart transport, GitHub PR #410.
- erpc: UART ZEPHYR Transport stop to work after a few transactions when using USB-CDC resolved, GitHub PR #420.

Removed

- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove cstbool library, GitHub PR #403.

1.12.0

Added

- eRPC: Add dynamic/static option for transport init, GitHub PR #361.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Winsock2 support, GitHub PR #365.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/support multiple clients, GitHub PR #271.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Feature/buffer head - Framed transport header data stored in MessageBuffer, GitHub PR #378.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Add experimental Java support.

Fixed

- eRPC: Fix receive error value for spidev, GitHub PR #363.
- eRPC: UartTransport::init adaptation to changed driver.
- eRPC: Fix typo in assert, GitHub PR #371.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Move enums to enum classes, GitHub PR #379.
- eRPC: Fixed rpmsg tty transport to work with serial transport, GitHub PR #373.

1.11.0

Fixed

- eRPC: Makefiles update, GitHub PR #301.
- eRPC: Resolving warnings in Python, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Python3.8 is not ready for usage of typing.Any type, GitHub PR #325.
- eRPC: Improved codec function to use reference instead of address, GitHub PR #324.
- eRPC: Fix NULL check for pending client creation, GitHub PR #341.
- eRPC: Replace sprintf with snprintf, GitHub PR #343.
- eRPC: Use MU_SendMsg blocking call in MU transport.
- eRPC: New LPSPI and LPI2C transport layers.
- eRPC: Freeing static objects, GitHub PR #353.
- eRPC: Fixed casting in deinit functions, GitHub PR #354.
- eRPC: Align LIBUSBSIO.GetNumPorts API use with libusbsio python module v. 2.1.11.
- erpcgen: Renamed temp variable to more generic one, GitHub PR #321.
- erpcgen: Add check that string read is not more than max length, GitHub PR #328.
- erpcgen: Move to g++ in pytest, GitHub PR #335.
- erpcgen: Use build=release for make, GitHub PR #334.
- erpcgen: Removed boost dependency, GitHub PR #346.
- erpcgen: Mingw support, GitHub PR #344.
- erpcgen: VS build update, GitHub PR #347.
- erpcgen: Modified name for common types macro scope, GitHub PR #337.
- erpcgen: Fixed memcpy for template, GitHub PR #352.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Change default build target to release + adding artefacts, GitHub PR #334.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Remove redundant includes, GitHub PR #338.
- eRPC,erpcgen: Many minor code improvements, GitHub PR #323.

1.10.0

Fixed

- eRPC: MU transport layer switched to blocking MU_SendMsg() API use.

1.10.0

Added

- eRPC: Add TCP_NODELAY option to python, GitHub PR #298.

Fixed

- eRPC: MUTransport adaptation to new supported SoCs.
- eRPC: Simplifying CI with installing dependencies using shell script, GitHub PR #267.
- eRPC: Using event for waiting for sock connection in TCP python server, formatting python code, C specific includes, GitHub PR #269.
- eRPC: Endianness agnostic update, GitHub PR #276.
- eRPC: Assertion added for functions which are returning status on freeing memory, GitHub PR #277.
- eRPC: Fixed closing arbitrator server in unit tests, GitHub PR #293.
- eRPC: Makefile updated to reflect the correct header names, GitHub PR #295.
- eRPC: Compare value length to used length() in reading data from message buffer, GitHub PR #297.
- eRPC: Replace EXPECT_TRUE with EXPECT_EQ in unit tests, GitHub PR #318.
- eRPC: Adapt rpmsg_lite based transports to changed rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() API parameters.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Better distuingish which file can and cannot by linked by C linker, GitHub PR #266.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Stop checking if pointer is NULL before sending it to the erpc_free function, GitHub PR #275.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Changed api to count with more interfaces, GitHub PR #304.
- erpcgen: Check before reading from heap the buffer boundaries, GitHub PR #287.
- erpcgen: Several fixes for tests and CI, GitHub PR #289.
- erpcgen: Refactoring erpcgen code, GitHub PR #302.
- erpcgen: Fixed assigning const value to enum, GitHub PR #309.
- erpcgen: Enable runTesttest_enumErrorCode_allDirection, serialize enums as int32 instead of uint32.

1.9.1

Fixed

- eRPC: Construct the USB CDC transport, rather than a client, GitHub PR #220.
- eRPC: Fix premature import of package, causing failure when attempting installation of Python library in a clean environment, GitHub PR #38, #226.
- eRPC: Improve python detection in make, GitHub PR #225.
- eRPC: Fix several warnings with deprecated call in pytest, GitHub PR #227.
- eRPC: Fix freeing union members when only default need be freed, GitHub PR #228.
- eRPC: Fix making test under Linux, GitHub PR #229.
- eRPC: Assert costumizing, GitHub PR #148.
- eRPC: Fix corrupt clientList bug in TransportArbitrator, GitHub PR #199.
- eRPC: Fix build issue when invoking g++ with -Wno-error=free-nonheap-object, GitHub PR #233.
- eRPC: Fix inout cases, GitHub PR #237.

- eRPC: Remove ERPC_PRE_POST_ACTION dependency on return type, GitHub PR #238.
- eRPC: Adding NULL to ptr when codec function failed, fixing memcpy when fail is present during deserialization, GitHub PR #253.
- eRPC: MessageBuffer usage improvement, GitHub PR #258.
- eRPC: Get rid for serial and enum34 dependency (enum34 is in python3 since 3.4 (from 2014)), GitHub PR #247.
- eRPC: Several MISRA violations addressed.
- eRPC: Fix timeout for Freertos semaphore, GitHub PR #251.
- eRPC: Use of rpmsg_lite_wait_for_link_up() in rpmsg_lite based transports, GitHub PR #223.
- eRPC: Fix codec nullptr dereferencing, GitHub PR #264.
- erpcgen: Fix two syntax errors in erpcgen Python output related to non-encapsulated unions, improved test for union, GitHub PR #206, #224.
- erpcgen: Fix serialization of list/binary types, GitHub PR #240.
- erpcgen: Fix empty list parsing, GitHub PR #72.
- erpcgen: Fix templates for malloc errors, GitHub PR #110.
- erpcgen: Get rid of encapsulated union declarations in global scale, improve enum usage in unions, GitHub PR #249, #250.
- erpcgen: Fix compile error:UniqueIdChecker.cpp:156:104:'sort' was not declared, GitHub PR #265.

1.9.0

Added

- eRPC: Allow used LIBUSBSIO device index being specified from the Python command line argument.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improving template usage, GitHub PR #153.
- eRPC: run_clang_format.py cleanup, GitHub PR #177.
- eRPC: Build TCP transport setup code into liberpc, GitHub PR #179.
- eRPC: Fix multiple definitions of g_client error, GitHub PR #180.
- eRPC: Fix memset past end of buffer in erpc_setup_mbf_static.cpp, GitHub PR #184.
- eRPC: Fix deprecated error with newer pytest version, GitHub PR #203.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Static allocation support and usage of rpmsg static FreeRTOSs related APi, GitHub PR #168, #169.
- erpcgen: Remove redundant module imports in erpcgen, GitHub PR #196.

1.8.1

Added

- eRPC: New i2c_slave_transport trasnport introduced.

Fixed

- eRPC: Fix misra erpc c, GitHub PR #158.
- eRPC: Allow conditional compilation of message_loggers and pre_post_action.
- eRPC: (D)SPI slave transports updated to avoid busy loops in rtos environments.
- erpcgen: Re-implement EnumMember::hasValue(), GitHub PR #159.
- erpcgen: Fixing several misra issues in shim code, erpcgen and unit tests updated, GitHub PR #156.
- erpcgen: Fix bison file, GitHub PR #156.

1.8.0

Added

- eRPC: Support win32 thread, GitHub PR #108.
- eRPC: Add mbed support for malloc() and free(), GitHub PR #92.
- eRPC: Introduced pre and post callbacks for eRPC call, GitHub PR #131.
- eRPC: Introduced new USB CDC transport.
- eRPC: Introduced new Linux spidev-based transport.
- eRPC: Added formatting extension for VSC, GitHub PR #134.
- erpcgen: Introduce ustring type for unsigned char and force cast to char*, GitHub PR #125.

Fixed

- eRPC: Update makefile.
- eRPC: Fixed warnings and error with using MessageLoggers, GitHub PR #127.
- eRPC: Extend error msg for python server service handle function, GitHub PR #132.
- eRPC: Update CMSIS UART transport layer to avoid busy loops in rtos environments, introduce semaphores.
- eRPC: SPI transport update to allow usage without handshaking GPIO.
- eRPC: Native _WIN32 erpc serial transport and threading.
- eRPC: Arbitrator deadlock fix, TCP transport updated, TCP setup functions introduced, GitHub PR #121.
- eRPC: Update of matrix_multiply.py example: Add –serial and –baud argument, GitHub PR #137.
- eRPC: Update of .clang-format, GitHub PR #140.
- eRPC: Update of erpc_framed_transport.cpp: return error if received message has zero length, GitHub PR #141.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136, #139.
- eRPC, erpcgen: Core re-formatted using Clang version 10.
- erpcgen: Enable deallocation in server shim code when callback/function pointer used as out parameter in IDL.
- erpcgen: Removed '$' character from generated symbol name in '_$union' suffix, GitHub PR #103.

- erpcgen: Resolved mismatch between C++ and Python for callback index type, GitHub PR #111.
- erpcgen: Python generator improvements, GitHub PR #100, #118.
- erpcgen: Fixed error messages produced by -Wall -Wextra -Wshadow -pedantic-errors compiler flags, GitHub PR #136.

1.7.4

Added

- eRPC: Support MU transport unit testing.
- eRPC: Adding mbed os support.

Fixed

- eRPC: Unit test code updated to handle service add and remove operations.
- eRPC: Several MISRA issues in rpmsg-based transports addressed.
- eRPC: Fixed Linux/TCP acceptance tests in release target.
- eRPC: Minor documentation updates, code formatting.
- erpcgen: Whitespace removed from C common header template.

1.7.3

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved the test_callbacks logic to be more understandable and to allow requested callback execution on the server side.
- eRPC: TransportArbitrator::prepareClientReceive modified to avoid incorrect return value type.
- eRPC: The ClientManager and the ArbitratedClientManager updated to avoid performing client requests when the previous serialization phase fails.
- erpcgen: Generate the shim code for destroy of statically allocated services.

1.7.2

Added

- eRPC: Add missing doxygen comments for transports.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved support of const types.
- eRPC: Fixed Mac build.
- eRPC: Fixed serializing python list.
- eRPC: Documentation update.

1.7.1

Fixed

- eRPC: Fixed semaphore in static message buffer factory.
- erpcgen: Fixed MU received error flag.
- erpcgen: Fixed tcp transport.

1.7.0

Added

- eRPC: List names are based on their types. Names are more deterministic.
- eRPC: Service objects are as a default created as global static objects.
- eRPC: Added missing doxygen comments.
- eRPC: Added support for 64bit numbers.
- eRPC: Added support of program language specific annotations.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Generating crc value is optional.
- eRPC: Fixed CMSIS Uart driver. Removed dependency on KSDK.
- eRPC: Forbid users use reserved words.
- eRPC: Removed outByref for function parameters.
- eRPC: Optimized code style of callback functions.

1.6.0

Added

- eRPC: Added @nullable support for scalar types.

Fixed

- eRPC: Improved code size of generated code.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC nested calls.
- eRPC: Improved eRPC list length variable serialization.

1.5.0

Added

- eRPC: Added support for unions type non-wrapped by structure.
- eRPC: Added callbacks support.
- eRPC: Added support @external annotation for functions.
- eRPC: Added support @name annotation.
- eRPC: Added Messaging Unit transport layer.
- eRPC: Added RPMSG Lite RTOS TTY transport layer.
- eRPC: Added version verification and IDL version verification between eRPC code and eRPC generated shim code.
- eRPC: Added support of shared memory pointer.
- eRPC: Added annotation to forbid generating const keyword for function parameters.
- eRPC: Added python matrix multiply example.
- eRPC: Added nested call support.
- eRPC: Added struct member “byref” option support.
- eRPC: Added support of forward declarations of structures
- eRPC: Added Python RPMsg Multiendpoint kernel module support
- eRPC: Added eRPC sniffer tool

1.4.0

Added

- eRPC: New RPMsg-Lite Zero Copy (RPMsgZC) transport layer.

Fixed

- eRPC: win_flex_bison.zip for windows updated.
- eRPC: Use one codec (instead of inCodec outCodec).

[1.3.0]

Added

- eRPC: New annotation types introduced (@length, @max_length, …).
- eRPC: Support for running both erpc client and erpc server on one side.
- eRPC: New transport layers for (LP)UART, (D)SPI.
- eRPC: Error handling support.

[1.2.0]

Added

- eRPC source directory organization changed.
- Many eRPC improvements.

[1.1.0]

Added

- Multicore SDK 1.1.0 ported to KSDK 2.0.0.

[1.0.0]

Added

- Initial Release

1.6 Multimedia

1.6.1 Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) Examples

Overview The Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) is designed to accelerate the development of audio processing applications for the HiFi family of DSP cores. The multicore version of XAF described in these examples is designed to work with subsystems having single or multiple DSPs, enabling sophisticated audio processing capabilities in embedded systems.

Each demo showcases a dual-core architecture:

- cm33/ - The ARM application for the Cortex-M33 core, which provides the user interface and system control
- dsp/ - The DSP application that performs audio processing using the XAF middleware library

When an application is started, a shell interface is displayed on the terminal that executes from the ARM core. Users can control the application through shell commands, which are relayed via RPMsg-Lite IPC to the DSP core where they are processed and responses are returned. This architecture demonstrates efficient partitioning of workloads - with user interface and control tasks handled by the ARM core while computationally intensive audio processing is offloaded to the specialized DSP core.

For more information about XAF and detailed documentation on the API and available components, please refer to the Cadence XAF documentation (/middleware/cadence/multicore-xaf/xa_af_hostless/doc).

Availability Note **Important**: These XAF examples are not included in the standard MCUXpresso SDK repository. They are available as part of the MCUXpresso SDK Builder package on the NXP website. To access these examples, please visit MCUXpresso SDK Builder and create a customized SDK package that includes the XAF examples for your target platform.

Included Examples

XAF Playback Example The dsp_xaf_playback application demonstrates audio file decoding and playback capabilities using the DSP core and Xtensa Audio Framework, supporting various audio codecs while handling operations through a shell interface on the ARM core that communicates with DSP processing.

XAF Record Example The dsp_xaf_record example captures audio from digital microphones (DMIC), processes it on the DSP core using voice enhancement algorithms, performs voice recognition (VIT), and outputs the detected wake words and voice commands to the console, enabling hands-free voice control applications.

XAF USB Example The XAF USB example demonstrates DSP-powered USB audio processing in two configurations: USB speaker and USB microphone. The application uses shell commands to switch between modes, with the ARM core handling USB communication while the DSP processes audio.

XAF Playback Example

Table of Content

Overview The dsp_xaf_playback application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library, and selected Xtensa audio codecs.

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow the use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* or *Example configuration* sections before running the demo.

Limitations:

- **MP3 encoder, G.711, G.722, BSAC, DAB+, DAB/MP2, DRM:** Provided only as linked libraries but are not enabled in the example.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface, SD card operations, and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The typical audio processing pipeline includes:

- File source component (reads from SD card)
- Decoder component (decodes compressed audio)
- Renderer component (outputs to audio hardware)

When the file playback command is issued, the ARM core reads the file from SD card and sends data to the DSP, which processes it and outputs to the audio hardware.

Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board
  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer
- SD card with audio files (for file playback feature)

Hardware Modifications Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.

- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK:*
  - Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.
  - Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.

- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector (J4).
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4, J50, J51, J52
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J29
2. Connect a micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J54

3. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:
    - 115200 baud rate
    - 8 data bits
    - No parity
    - One stop bit
    - No flow control
4. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
5. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
6. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

Example Configuration The example can be configured by user. Before configuration, please check the *table* to see if the feature is supported on the development board.

- **MIMXRT700-EVK Decoder Configuration:**

  RT700 has limited RAM on Cortex-M33 core 1 which limits the available decoders. Only SBC decoder is enabled by default. In order to enable a different decoder/encoder, it is necessary to define the appropriate define on project level. Use one of the following define from the list of the supported decoders on the HiFi1 core:

  - XA_AAC_DECODER
  - XA_MP3_DECODER
  - XA_SBC_DECODER
  - XA_VORBIS_DECODER
  - XA_OPUS_DECODER

Running the Demo The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function
2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
******************************
DSP audio framework demo start
******************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33_Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33_Main][APP_SDCARD_Task] start
[CM33_Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33_Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (*If multichannel playback mode is enabled, the description is slightly different. Available encoders/decoders may differ - refer to the* table.):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"file": Perform audio file decode and playback from SD card
  USAGE: file [list|stop|<audio_file>]
    list          List audio files on SD card available for playback
    <audio_file>  Select file from SD card and start playback

"decoder": Perform decode on DSP and play to speaker.
  USAGE: decoder [aac|mp3|opus|sbc|vorbis_ogg|vorbis_raw]
   aac:        Decode aac data
   mp3:        Decode mp3 data
   opus:       Decode opus data
   sbc:        Decode sbc data
   vorbis_ogg: Decode OGG VORBIS data
   vorbis_raw: Decode raw VORBIS data

"encoder": Encode PCM data on DSP and compare with reference data.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
  USAGE: encoder [opus|sbc]
   opus: Encode pcm data using opus encoder
   sbc:  Encode pcm data using sbc encoder

"src" Perform sample rate conversion on DSP

"gain": Perform PCM gain adjustment on DSP
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a file (mp3/aac/vorbis/…):

```
    File playback start, initial buffer size: 16384
    [DSP Codec] Audio Device Ready
    [DSP Codec] Decoder component started
    [DSP Codec] Setting decode playback format:
      Decoder     : mp3_dec
      Sample rate: 16000
      Bit Width  : 16
      Channels   : 2
    [DSP Codec] Renderer component started
    [DSP Codec] Connected XA_DECODER ->  XA_RENDERER
    [DSP_ProcessThread] start
    [DSP_BufferThread] start
```

Xtensa IDE log when decoder command starts playback successfully:

```
    [DSP_Main] Input buffer addr: 0x20020000, buffer size: 94276
    [DSP Codec] Audio Device Ready
    [DSP Codec] Decoder created
    [DSP Codec] Decoder component started
    [DSP Codec] Renderer component created
    [DSP Codec] Connected XA_DECODER -> XA_RENDERER
    [DSP_ProcessThread] start
    [DSP_ProcessThread] Execution complete - exiting
    [DSP_ProcessThread] exiting
    [DSP Codec] Audio device closed

    [CM33 CMD] [APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 0, error: 0
    [CM33 CMD] Decode complete
```

MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK Multi-channel Support: The MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board supports multi-channel audio. When selecting audio files for playback, you can specify the number of channels:

```
```
file [list|stop|<audio_file> [<nchannel>]]
<nchannel>   Select the number of channels (2 or 8 can be selected).
NOTE: Selected audio file must meet the following parameters:
            - Sample rate: 96 kHz
            - Width: 32 bit
```
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a PCM file:

```
```
[DSP_FILE_REN] Audio Device Ready
[DSP_FILE_REN] post-proc/pcm_gain component started
[DSP_FILE_REN] post-proc/client_proxy component started
[DSP_FILE_REN] Connected post-proc/pcm_gain -> post-proc/client_proxy
[DSP_FILE_REN] renderer component started
```

(continues on next page)
```

(continued from previous page)

```
[DSP_FILE_REN] Connected post-proc/client_proxy -> renderer
[DSP_BufferThread] start
[DSP_ProcessThread] start
[DSP_CleanupThread] start3
```
```

Known Issues

1. The "file stop" command doesn't stop the playback for some small files (with low sample rate).
2. MIMXRT700-EVK: Has limited RAM on Cortex-M33 core 1 which limits the available decoders.

XAF Record Example

Table of Content

Overview The dsp_xaf_record application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library, with a focus on audio recording, processing and voice recognition (VIT - Voice Intelligent Technology).

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow to use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* or *Example configuration* sections before running the demo.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The typical audio processing pipeline includes:

- Audio source component - DMIC audio
- VIT component (perform voice recognition)
- Renderer component (playback on codec)

The application demonstrates recording from digital microphones (DMIC), processing the audio with voice enhancement algorithms, performing voice recognition, and prints back in console detected WakeWord and list of commands.
```

### Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board
  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer

**Hardware Modifications** Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.
- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2
- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK*
  1. Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.
  2. Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.
- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

### Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4, J50 for third channel when using 3 microphones
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J29
2. Connect a micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J54
3. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:

   - 115200 baud rate
   - 8 data bits
   - No parity
   - One stop bit
   - No flow control
4. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
5. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
6. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

**Example Configuration** The example can be configured by user. Before configuration, please check the *table* to see if the feature is supported on the development board.

**Running the Demo** The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function
2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

**Running on CM33** When the demo runs successfully, the CM33 terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
******************************
DSP audio framework demo start
******************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33 Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33 Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33 Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP

>>
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"record_dmic": Record DMIC audio , perform voice recognition (VIT) and playback on codec
USAGE: record_dmic [language]
For voice recognition say supported WakeWord and in 3s frame supported command.
If selected model contains strings, then WakeWord and list of commands will be printed in console.
NOTE: this command does not return to the shell
```

After running the "record_dmic en" command, similar output will be printed

```
[CM33 CMD] Setting VIT language to en
[DSP_Main] Number of channels 1, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 32
[CM33 CMD] [APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 13, error: 0
[DSP Record] Audio Device Ready
[CM33 CMD] DSP DMIC Recording started
[CM33 CMD] To see VIT functionality say wakeword and command
[DSP VIT] VIT Model info
[DSP VIT]   VIT Model Release = 0x40a00
[DSP VIT]   Language supported : English
[DSP VIT]   Number of WakeWords supported : 2
[DSP VIT]   Number of Commands supported : 12
[DSP VIT]   VIT_Model integrating WakeWord and Voice Commands strings : YES
[DSP VIT]   WakeWords supported :
[DSP VIT]    'HEY NXP'
[DSP VIT]    'HEY TV'
[DSP VIT]   Voice commands supported :
[DSP VIT]    'MUTE'
[DSP VIT]    'NEXT'
[DSP VIT]    'SKIP'
[DSP VIT]    'PAIR DEVICE'
[DSP VIT]    'PAUSE'
[DSP VIT]    'STOP'
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[DSP VIT]   'POWER OFF'
[DSP VIT]   'POWER ON'
[DSP VIT]   'PLAY MUSIC'
[DSP VIT]   'PLAY GAME'
[DSP VIT]   'WATCH CARTOON'
[DSP VIT]   'WATCH MOVIE'
[DSP Record] connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
[DSP Record] connected XA_GAIN_0 -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
[DSP Record] connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
[DSP VIT]  - WakeWord detected 1 HEY NXP
[DSP VIT]  - Voice Command detected 6 STOP
```

Xtensa IDE log of successful start of command:

```
Number of channels 1, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 16
Audio Device Ready
connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
connected CAPTURER -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
```

Running on DSP Debug configuration: When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following:

```
Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
  Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
  Library Version : 3.2
  API Version     : 3.0

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
Number of channels 1, sampling rate 16000, PCM width 16

connected CAPTURER -> GAIN_0
connected XA_GAIN_0 -> XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0
connected XA_VIT_PRE_PROC_0 -> XA_RENDERER_0
```

Known Issues There are limited features in release SRAM target because of memory limitations. To enable/disable components, set appropriate preprocessor define in project settings to 0/1 (e.g. XA_VIT_PRE_PROC etc.). Debug and flash targets have full functionality enabled.

XAF USB Example

Table of Content

Overview The dsp_xaf_usb_demo application demonstrates audio processing using the DSP core, the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF) middleware library.

As shown in the table below, the application is supported on several development boards and each development board may have certain limitations, some development boards may also require hardware modifications or allow to use of an audio expansion board. Therefore, please check the supported features and *Hardware modifications* section before running the demo.

Functionality The application includes the following main components:

1. **ARM Core (CM33)** - Handles user interface, and communicates with the DSP core
2. **DSP Core** - Processes audio data using the Xtensa Audio Framework (XAF)

The XAF USB example demonstrates DSP-powered USB audio processing in two configurations: USB speaker and USB microphone. The application uses shell commands to switch between modes, with the ARM core handling USB communication while the DSP processes audio.

- USB Speaker Mode (USB2.0 ▯ Line out): Receives audio from a USB host, processes it on the DSP, and outputs through the headphone jack, making the device function as a USB speaker for your computer.
- USB Microphone Mode (DMIC ▯ USB2.0): Captures audio from the onboard digital microphones, processes it on the DSP, and streams it to a USB host as a standard audio input device.

Hardware Requirements

- Development board (one of the following):
  - EVK-MIMXRT595 board
  - EVK-MIMXRT685 board
  - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK board
  - MIMXRT700-EVK board
- 2x Micro USB cable
- JTAG/SWD debugger
- Headphones with 3.5 mm stereo jack
- Personal Computer

Hardware Modifications Some development boards need some hardware modifications to run the application.

- *EVK-MIMXRT595:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

  Note: The I3C Pin configuration in pin_mux.c is verified for default 1.8V, for 3.3V, need to manually configure slew rate to slow mode for I3C-SCL/SDA.

- *EVK-MIMXRT685:*

  To enable the example audio using WM8904 codec, connect pins as follows:

  - JP7-1 <–> JP8-2

- *MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK*
  - Set the hardware jumpers (Tower system/base module) to default settings.

  - Set hardware jumpers JP2 2<–>3, JP44 1<–>2 and JP45 1<–>2.
- *MIMXRT700-EVK:*

  Set the hardware jumpers to default settings.

Preparation

1. Connect headphones to Audio HP / Line-Out connector.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J4
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J4
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J4
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J29
2. Connect the first micro USB cable between the PC host and the debug USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J40
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J5
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J5
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J54
3. Connect the second micro USB cable between the PC host and the USB port on the development board.
   - EVK-MIMXRT595 - J38
   - EVK-MIMXRT685 - J7
   - MIMXRT685-AUD-EVK - J7
   - MIMXRT700-EVK - J40
4. Open a serial terminal with the following settings:
   - 115200 baud rate
   - 8 data bits
   - No parity
   - One stop bit
   - No flow control
5. Download the program for CM33 core to the target board.
6. Launch the debugger in your IDE to begin running the demo.
7. If building release configuration, start the xt-ocd daemon and download the program for DSP core to the target board. If building debug configuration, launch the Xtensa IDE or xt-gdb debugger to begin running the demo.

Notes:

- DSP image can only be debugged using J-Link debugger. See the document 'Getting Started with Xplorer' for your particular board for more information.

Running the Demo The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application. The DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Application for Cortex-M33 can be built by the other toolchains listed in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes.

The release configurations of the demo will combine both applications into one ARM image. With this, the ARM core will load and start the DSP application on startup. Pre-compiled DSP binary images are provided under dsp/binary/ directory. If you make changes to the DSP application in release configuration, rebuild ARM application after building the DSP application. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 1 when building release configuration.

The debug configurations will build two separate applications that need to be loaded independently. DSP application can be built by the following tools: Xtensa Xplorer or Xtensa C Compiler. Required tool versions can be found in MCUXpresso SDK Release Notes for the board. Application for cm33 can be built by the other toolchains listed there. If you plan to use MCUXpresso IDE for cm33 you will have to make sure that the preprocessor symbol DSP_IMAGE_COPY_TO_RAM, found in IDE project settings, is defined to the value 0 when building debug configuration. The ARM application will power and clock the DSP, so it must be loaded prior to loading the DSP application.

In order to debug both the Cortex-M33 and DSP side of the application, please follow the instructions:

1. It is necessary to run the Cortex-M33 side first and stop the application before the DSP_Start function
2. Run the xt-ocd daemon with proper settings
3. Download and debug the DSP application

In order to get TRACE debug output from the XAF it is necessary to define XF_TRACE 1 in the project settings. It is possible to save the TRACE output into RAM using DUMP_TRACE_TO_BUF 1 define on project level. Please see the initialization of the TRACE function in the xaf_main_dsp.c file. For more details see XAF documentation.

Running on CM33 When the demo runs successfully, the CM33 terminal will display the following output (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
******************************
DSP audio framework demo start
******************************

[CM33 Main] Configure codec

[DSP_Main] Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
[DSP_Main] Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
[DSP_Main] Library Version : 3.5
[DSP_Main] API Version     : 3.2

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
[CM33 Main] DSP image copied to DSP TCM
[CM33 Main][APP_DSP_IPC_Task] start
[CM33 Main][APP_Shell_Task] start

Copyright  2024  NXP

>>
```

Type help to see the command list. Similar description will be displayed on serial console (example from MIMXRT700-EVK):

```
"help": List all the registered commands

"exit": Exit program

"version": Query DSP for component versions

"usb_speaker": Perform usb speaker device and playback on DSP
    USAGE: usb_speaker [start|stop]
    start         Start usb speaker device and playback on DSP
    stop          Stop usb speaker device and playback on DSP

"usb_mic": Record DMIC audio and playback on usb microphone audio device
    USAGE: usb_mic [start|stop]
    start         Start record and playback on usb microphone audio device
    stop          Stop record and playback on usb microphone audio device
```

When usb_speaker command starts playback successfully, the terminal will display following output:

```
[APP_DSP_IPC_Task] response from DSP, cmd: 21, error: 0
DSP USB playback start
>>
```

Xtensa IDE log when command is playing a file:

```
USB speaker start, initial buffer size: 960
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Audio Device Ready
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] post-proc/pcm_gain component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] post-proc/client_proxy component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Connected post-proc/pcm_gain -> post-proc/client_proxy
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] renderer component started
[DSP_USB_SPEAKER] Connected post-proc/client_proxy -> renderer
[DSP_ProcessThread] start
[DSP_BufferThread] start
[DSP_CleanupThread] start
```

The USB device on your host will be enumerated as XAF USB DEMO.

Xtensa IDE will not show any additional log entry.

Running the demo DSP Debug configuration: When the demo runs successfully, the terminal will display the following:

```
Cadence Xtensa Audio Framework
  Library Name    : Audio Framework (Hostless)
  Library Version : 2.6p1
  API Version     : 2.0

[DSP_Main] start
[DSP_Main] established RPMsg link
```

Known Issues

- When starting the "usb_speaker" after the "usb_mic" command, the sound output may be distorted. Please power cycle the board.

1.7 Wireless

1.7.1 NXP Wireless Framework and Stacks

Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, 802.15.4

Application notes

- Link AN12918-Wi-Fi-Tx-Power-Table-and-Channel-Scan-Management-for-i.MX-RT-SDK.pdf
- Link TN00066-WFA-Derivative-Certification-Process.pdf

User manuals

- Link UM11441-Getting-Started-with-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-and-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf
- UM11442-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Demo-Applications-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf
- Link UM11443-NXP-Wi-Fi-and-Bluetooth-Debug-Feature-Configuration-Guide-for-i.MX-RT-Platforms.pdf
- Link UM11567-WFA-Certification-Guide-for-NXP-based-Wireless-Modules-on-i.MX-RT-Platform-Running-RTOS.pdf

Release notes

Wireless SoC features and release notes for FreeRTOS

About this document This document provides information about the supported features, release versions, fixed and/or known issues, performance of the Wi-Fi, Bluetooth/802.15.4 radios, including the coexistence.

The SDK release version 25.12.00 has been tested for the wireless SoCs listed in Supported products.

Supported products

- 88W8987
- IW416
- IW6111
- IW6122
- AW6113
- RW610
- RW612

Parent topic:*About this document*

[1]: The support of IW611 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [2]: The support of IW612 is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC. [3]: AW611 module support is available only in i.MX RT1180 EVKA

Features

Wi-Fi radio

Client mode

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 M
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) TX and RX sup
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) 4k TX and RX su
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC) 1x1 20 MHz and 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	HT Beamformee (explicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80 MHz
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9) - 1x1
802.11ac - Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (Explicit and Implicit)
802.11ac - Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac - Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac - Very high throughput	Low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ax - High efficiency	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidths: 80 MHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 106 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	OFDMA (UL/DL, 484 RU)
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM
802.11ax - High efficiency	Target wake time (TWT)
802.11ax - High efficiency	256 QAM modulation – MCS8 and MCS9
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 2.4 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	1024 QAM modulation – MCS10 and MCS11, 5 GHz
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	DCM
802.11ax - High efficiency	ER (extended range)
802.11ax - High efficiency	SU Beamforming
802.11ax - High efficiency	OMI (operating mode indication)
802.11a/b/g features	802.11b/g data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	802.11a data rates up to 54 Mbit/s
802.11a/b/g features	TX rate adaptation (BG)
802.11a/b/g features	Fragmentation/defragmentation
802.11a/b/g features	ERP protection, slot time, preamble
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wirele
802.11i security	Opensource WPA Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | WPA S
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode) | W

Table 1 – continued from p

Features	Sub features
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods3 | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode3 | WPA Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise3 (Suite-B) |National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | WPA Sup
802.11i security	Embedded Supplicant Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Embedde
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Roaming
802.11i security	WPA3 Enterprise3
Power save mode	Deep sleep
Power save mode	IEEE power save
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (inband)3
Power save mode	Host sleep/WoWLAN (outband)3
Power save mode	U-APSD
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Unicast management frames - Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	Broadcast management frames - Encryption/decryption - us
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	SA query request/response
802.11w - PMF (protected management frames)	PMF support using embedded supplicant
DPP functionality	Wi-Fi easy connect3
General features	Embedded supplicant
General features	Host sleep packet filtering
General features	Host-based supplicant
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EDMAC - EU adaptivity support (ETSI certification)
General features	External coexistence
General features	IPv6 NS offload
General features	FIPS
General features	TKIP1
General features	RF test mode
General features	802.11k
General features	802.11v
General features	DFS radar detection in peripheral mode (follow AP)5
General features	Embedded roaming based on RSSI threshold beacon loss
General features	ARP offload
General features	Cloud keep alive
General features	UNII-4 channel support
General features	ClockSync using TSF
General features	Auto reconnect
General features	CSI (channel state information)3
General features	Ambient Motion Index (AMI)3
General features	Independent reset (in-band)3
General features	Independent reset (out-band)3
General features	Wi-Fi agile multiband
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode
General features	802.11mc - WLS (Wi-Fi location service)3
General features	802.11az3

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] As per Wi-Fi specification, connecting in TKIP security in non 802.11n mode is allowed.

[2] Support available in host-base supplicant.

[3] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

[4] Read more about NCP feature in *References*. [5] To enable the feature, CONFIG_ECSA = 1 must be defined in wifi_config.h (does not apply to RW610 and RW612).

AP mode

Features	Sub features
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band operation supported channel bandwidth: 20 M
802.11n - High throughput	2.4 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11n - High throughput	Short/long guard interval (400 ns/800 ns)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 72 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	Data rates up to 150 Mbit/s (MCS 0 to MCS 7)
802.11n - High throughput	1 spatial stream (1x1)
802.11n - High throughput	HT protection mechanisms
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (AMPDU) Rx support
802.11n - High throughput	Aggregated MAC service data unit (AMSDU) -4k RX support
802.11n - High throughput	Max client support (up to 8 devices)
802.11n - High throughput	TX MCS rate adaptation (BGN)
802.11n - High throughput	RX low density parity check (LDPC)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 20 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 40 MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	5 GHz band supported channel bandwidth: 80MHz
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Short/long guard interval (400ns/800ns)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 86.7 Mbps (MCS0 to MCS 8)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Data rates up to 433.3 Mbps (MCS 0 to MCS 9)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Single user- Aggregated MAC protocol data unit (SU-AMPDU
802.11ac – Very high throughput	RTS/CTS with BW signaling
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Backward compatibility with non-VHT devices
802.11ac – Very high throughput	TX VHT MCS rate adaptation
802.11ac – Very high throughput	MU-MIMO Beamformee (explicit and implicit)
802.11ac – Very high throughput	Operation mode notification
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (20 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	2.4 GHz band operation (40 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (20MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (40MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11ax – High efficiency	5 GHz band operation (80 MHz channel bandwidth)
802.11d	802.11d - Regulatory domain/operating class/country info
802.11e -QoS	EDCA [enhanced distributed channel access] / WMM (wirele
802.11i security	Hostapd Support
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Hosta
802.11i security	WPA2+WPA3 PSK Mixed Mode (WPA3 Transition Mode) | H
802.11i security	Wi-Fi Enhanced Open - OWE (Opportunistic Wireless Encry
802.11i security	802.1x EAP Authentication Methods | Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA2-Enterprise Mixed Mode1 | Hostapd
802.11i security	WPA3-Enterprise (Suite-B)1 |National Security Algorithm (C
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Hostapd
802.11i security	Embedded Authenticator
802.11i security	WPA2-PSK AES | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA+WPA2 PSK Mixed Mode | Embedded Supplicant
802.11i security	WPA3-SAE (Simultaneous Authentication of Equals) | Embe
802.11i security	802.11w - PMF (Protected Management Frames) | Embedde

Table 2 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
802.11y	Extended channel switch announcement (ECSA)
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	PMF require and capable
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Unicast management frames -Encryption/decryption - using
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	Broadcast management frames -encryption/decryption - usi
802.11w - protected management frames (PMF)	SA query request/response
General features	Embedded authenticator
General features	Embedded MLME
General features	EU adaptivity support
General features	Automatic channel selection (ACS)
General features	External coexistence (software interface)
General features	Independent reset (in-band)1
General features	Network co-processor (NCP) mode2
General features	Vendor specific IE (custom IE)
General features	Hidden SSID (broadcast SSID disabled)
General features	MAC address filter
General features	Multiple external STA support

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory. [2] Read more about NCP feature in *References*.

AP-STA mode

Features	Sub features	88W89	IW41	IW611/IV	RW610/R\	IW61	AW611
Simultaneous AP-STA operation (same channel)	AP-STA functionality	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
SAD	Software antenna diversity1	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature.

Parent topic:*Features*

Wi-Fi Generic features

Features	Sub features	88W898	IW41	IW611/IW6	RW610/RW	IW61	AW611
Generi	Firmware download (parallel)1	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Generi	Secure boot	N	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi	Kconfig memory optimizer3	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi	Firmware Compression2	N	Y	N	N	N	N
Generi	u-AP intra-BSS	Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Y
Generi	Net Monitor Mode	N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generi	Net Monitor Mode with packet transmission	N	N	N	Y	Y	N
Generi	In-Channel Net Monitor mode	N	N	N	N	N	N

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] The feature is used to compress the Wi-Fi Bluetooth firmware and optimize the flashing of the host [3] Refer to *10*.

Wi-Fi direct/P2P

Features	Sub features	88W898	IW416	IW611/IW6	RW610/RW6	IW610	AW6113
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Auto GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GO	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P GC	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Persistent Group	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Invitation	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Device Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P Provision Discovery	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P simultaneous GO + STA	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y
P2P basic functionality1	P2P simultaneous GC + uAP	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y	Y

Parent topic: Wi-Fi radio

[1] Feature not enabled by default in the SDK. Refer to *Feature enable and memory impact* for the macro to enable the feature and the impact on the memory when enabling the feature. [2] This is an experimental software release for this feature for IW416. [3] Contact your support representative to use this feature for.

Bluetooth radio

Bluetooth classic

Feature	Sub feature	88W8	IW4	IW611/	RW610/	IW6	AW611
General features	Bluetooth Class 1.5 and Class 2 support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Scatternet support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Maximum of seven simultaneous ACL connections – Central links	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Automatic packet type selection	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Bluetooth - 2.1 to 5.0 specification support	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Low power sniff	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Deep sleep using out-of-band	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Wake on Bluetooth (SoC to host)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (in-band)1	Y	Y	Y	Y	N	Y
General features	Independent reset (out-band)1	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	Firmware download (parallel)1	Y	Y	N	N	N	N
General features	RF test mode	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	ACL (DM1, DH1, DM3, DH3, DM5, DH5, 2-DH1, 2-DH3, 2-DH5, 3-DH1, 3-DH3, 3-DH5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	SCO (HV1, HV3)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth packet type supported	eSCO (EV3, EV4, EV5, 2EV3, 3EV3, 2EV5, 3EV5)	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	A2DP source/sink	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	AVRCP target/controller	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HFP Dev/AG	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	OPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	SPP server/client	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth profiles supported	HID target/device	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM NBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y
Bluetooth audio features	PCM WBS central/peripheral	Y	Y	Y	N	N	Y

Parent topic: Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

Bluetooth LE

Features	Sub features
Generic features	Maximum 16 Bluetooth LE connections (central role)
Generic features	Deep sleep using out-of-band
Generic features	Wake on Bluetooth LE (SoC to Host)
Generic features	RF Test mode
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE HID over GATT
Bluetooth profile support	Bluetooth LE GAP
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy physical layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low Energy link layer
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Enhancements to HCI for Low Energy
Bluetooth LE 4.0 support	Low energy direct test mode
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Low duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE dual mode topology
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE privacy v1.1
Bluetooth 4.1 support	Bluetooth LE link layer topology
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE secure connection
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE link layer privacy v1.2
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Bluetooth LE data length extension
Bluetooth 4.2 support	Link layer extended scanner filter policies
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Bluetooth LE 2 Mbps support
Bluetooth 5.0 support	High duty cycle directed advertising
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy advertising extension
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy long range
Bluetooth 5.0 support	Low Energy periodic advertisement
Bluetooth 5.2 support	Low Energy power control
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Isochronous channel
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIG Validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio: Mono and Stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Broadcast LE Audio BIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS source
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS sink
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIG validation
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS synchronization
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio Phy: 1M/2M/ coded
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio framed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio unframed mode
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio sequential packing
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio: mono and stereo
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS encrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio CIS unencrypted audio
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Unicast LE Audio TX/RX and bidirectional traffic

Table 3 – continued from prev

Features	Sub features
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	ISO interval for LE Audio: 7.5ms 10ms 20ms 30ms
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	Sampling frequency for LE Audio: 8kHz 16kHz 24kHz, 32kH
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Auracast use cases: Auracast streaming 2 BISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast use cases: Unicast streaming 2 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	LE Audio Unicast Use cases: Unicast streaming 4 CISes
Bluetooth LE audio support1 2	A2DP + Auracast/Unicast Bridge use cases – CIS/BIS
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM Coexistence mode (shared antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	STA + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth LE coexistence
BCA TDM coexistence mode (separate antenna)	AP + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE coexistence

Note: Details of the tested Bluetooth LE Audio use cases:

- Number of streams:
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 1 LE ACL (for 4-CIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms)
  - 1-CIG | upto 4-CIS with 4 separate LE ACL (for 4-CIS: SDU Size= Max 100 Oct, PHY=2M, RTN=1, SDU Int: 10ms only) (execute only mono UCs for 4-CIS)
  - 1-BIG | upto 4-BIS (for 4-BIS: execute only mono UCs, SDU Int: 10ms only)
- PHY: 2M and 1M
- Audio mode: mono (for 1 to 4 streams) and stereo (for 1 stream)
- Packing: sequential and interleaved
- Bit rate: maximum 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with upto 3-CIS: maximum bit rate 96kbps
  - For 1-CIG with 4-CIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 1-BIG with 4-BIS: maximum bit rate 80kbps
  - For 2-CIG cases: maximum bit rate 80kbps
- Mode: unframed mode
- 48_5 and 48_6 mono and stereo configurations are not supported.

Details of the tested Bluetooth coexistence (Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio) use cases:

- Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE Audio
- A2DP + Bluetooth LE Audio bridging support
- A2DP sink link (central) -> LEA 2-CIS (SDU Int: 10ms only | A2DP only with SBC Codec | PHY: 2M)

Parent topic: Bluetooth radio

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] LE audio feature is supported for standalone scenarios only and not for BR/EDR and Wi-Fi co-existence scenarios such as LE audio + BR/EDR link or LE audio + Wi-Fi link. From the perspective

of NXP Edgefast Bluetooth host stack, LE audio feature can be disabled by the CONFIG_BT_AUDIO macro without impact on any other features. LE audio feature can be tested by the user, using their own supported host stack.

Parent topic:*Features*

802.15.4 radio

Features	Sub features	IW612	IW610	RW612
General features	Spinel over SPI	Y	N	N
General features	OpenThread RCP Mode implementing Thread1.3	Y	N	N
General features	802.15.4-2015 MAC/PHY as required by Thread 1.3	Y	Y	Y
General features	OpenThread Border Router (OTBR) v1.1	Y	Y	Y
General features	Direct/indirect transmission with/without ACK	Y	Y	Y
General features	802.15.4 CSL parent feature implementation	Y	Y	Y
General features	Enhanced Frame Pending	Y	Y	Y
General features	Enhanced keep alive	Y	Y	Y
General features	Router	Y	Y	Y
General features	Leader	Y	Y	Y
General features	Router Eligible End Device (REED)	Y	Y	Y
General features	End Device (FED, MED)	Y	Y	Y
Zigbee features	Coordinator	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	Router	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	End Device (RX ON)	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	R23	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA Client	N	N	Y
Zigbee features	OTA server	N	N	Y
Matter features	Matter over Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
Matter features	Matter over Thread	Y	N	Y

Parent topic:*Features*

Coexistence

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/802.15.4 coexistence

Features	Sub features	IW6´	IW6´	RW612
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	STA + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Mobile AP + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth LE2	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Bluetooth + Bluetooth LE + OpenThread + Wi-Fi	Y	N	N
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	Single antenna configuration	Y	Y	Y
BCA_TDM separate antenna1 (lower and higher isolation) 1x1 Wi-Fi, (Bluetooth and 802.15.4 shared)	External Coexistence PTA	N	Y	Y

Parent topic: Coexistence

[1] Experimental feature intended for evaluation/early development only and not production. Incomplete mandatory certification.

[2] The narrow-band radio can be configured to support Bluetooth LE, 802.15.4, and to time-slice between Bluetooth LE and 802.15.4.

Parent topic:*Features*

Feature enable and memory impact

Features	Macros to enable the feature	Memory impact
CSI	CONFIG_CSI	Flash - 60K, RAM - 4K
AMI	CONFIG_CSI_AMI3	Flash - 2032K, RAM - 772K
DPP	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_DPP	Flash - 240K, RAM - 12K
Independent reset	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLDCONFIG_WIFI_IND_RESET	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Wi-Fi	CONFIG_WIFI_IND_DNLD	Minimal
Parallel firmware download Bluetooth	CONFIG_BT_IND_DNLD	Minimal
WPA3 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPTO_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
WPA2 enterprise	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_CRYPTO_ENTERPRISE [Macros specific to EAP-methods included] CONFIG_EAP_TLS CONFIG_EAP_PEAP CONFIG_EAP_TTLS CONFIG_EAP_FAST CONFIG_EAP_SIM CONFIG_EAP_AKA CONFIG_EAP_AKA_PRIME	Flash - 165K, RAM - 18K
Host sleep	CONFIG_HOST_SLEEP	Minimal
WMM	CONFIG_WMM1	Flash - 10K, RAM - 57K
802.11mc	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
802.11az	CONFIG_11MC CONFIG_CSI[2] CONFIG_WLS_CSI_PROC2 CONFIG_11AZ	Flash: 52.78KB, RAM : 121.1KB
Non-blocking firmware download mechanism	CONFIG_FW_DNLD_ASYNC	—
Antenna diversity	CONFIG_WLAN_CALDATA_2ANT_DIVERSITY	-
P2P	CONFIG_WPA_SUPP_P2P	-

Note:

- For Wi-Fi, the macros are set with the value “**0**” by default in the file wifi_config_default.h located in <SDK_PATH>/middleware/wifi_nxp/incl/ directory.

To enable the features, set the value of the macros to "***1***" in the file wifi_config.h located in*<SDK_Wi-Fi_Example_PATH>/ *directory****.***

- Bluetooth

  To enable the features, set the value of the macros to "**1**" in the file app_bluetooth_config.h located in <SDK_Bluetooth_Example_PATH>/ directory.

[1] The macro is not used for IW416.

[2] Prerequisite macros for 802.11mc and 802.11az features

[3] Enable PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE only for MCUXpresso IDE and specifically for the RT1060-EVKC and RT1170-EVKB platforms

- Go to project properties > C/C++ Build > Settings > Preprocessor.
- Add PRINTF_FLOAT_ENABLE=1

88W8987 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: 88W8987
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.9
  - 16 - Major revision
  - 92 - Feature pack
  - 21 - Release version
  - p153.9 - Patch number

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: refer to *4*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- External Access Point: ASUS AX88U
- DUT: W8987 Murata (Module: **1ZM M.2**) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- External Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External APs: ASUS AX88U

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	52	52	60	63
WPA2-AES	50	51	60	62
WPA3-SAE	50	51	60	62

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	62	83	121	124
WPA2-AES	61	82	120	126
WPA3-SAE	60	82	120	126

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	52	60	64
WPA2-AES	43	52	61	64
WPA3-SAE	43	52	60	65

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	64	87	126	125
WPA2-AES	63	85	125	120
WPA3-SAE	63	80	125	123

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	60	73	78
WPA2-AES	47	60	73	77
WPA3-SAE	47	60	73	77

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	68	96	161	157
WPA2-AES	69	92	160	155
WPA3-SAE	70	94	160	155

STA mode throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	124	119	228	235
WPA2-AES	118	107	228	204
WPA3-SAE	114	107	229	203

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput

External client: Apple Macbook Air

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	47	48	57	60
WPA2-AES	46	49	57	60
WPA3-SAE	47	49	57	60

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	66	81	107	121
WPA2-AES	65	80	107	120
WPA3-SAE	65	80	108	120

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	52	60	61
WPA2-AES	44	51	60	61
WPA3-SAE	44	51	60	61

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	70	89	126	103
WPA2-AES	70	87	124	102
WPA3-SAE	70	88	125	103

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	60	73	76
WPA2-AES	48	59	73	76
WPA3-SAE	48	60	73	76

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	77	106	161	102
WPA2-AES	77	104	160	102
WPA3-SAE	77	104	160	111

Mobile AP Mode Throughput - AC Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	127	141	227	217
WPA2-AES	124	127	227	198
WPA3-SAE	125	127	227	173

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode-Associated event is received even when connecting using wrong password WFA APUT Low iperf TCP/UDP Tx throughput with Realtek station

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	In wrong password scenario, After updating new password the phone is not able to connect with DUTAP

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p142.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to encrypt and decrypt data with ccmp 128 and 256 using CLI crypto commands.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.2

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUTSTA does not associate to hidden SSID beaconing in DFS channel.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.2 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Getting low TCP/UDP TP in DUT-AP 11ac-vht80 mode after hard-reset or wlan-reset.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Added P2P Persistance and P2P Invitation

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
NA	

Parent topic:*88W8987 release notes*

IW416 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW416
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 16.92.21.p153.9
  - 16 - Major revision
  - 92 - Feature pack

  - 21 - Release version
  - p153.9 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Host platform

- All i.MX RT platforms running FreeRTOS.
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 Support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW416 Murata (Module: 1XK M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply

- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version: gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput

External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	44	47	59	59
WPA2-AES	39	43	58	55
WPA3-SAE	39	45	57	53

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	72	59	95	87
WPA2-AES	69	58	116	92
WPA3-SAE	57	58	115	91

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	43	48	59	59
WPA2-AES	42	48	56	60
WPA3-SAE	42	47	57	58

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	68	64	118	96
WPA2-AES	65	59	117	96
WPA3-SAE	69	59	118	96

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput

External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	41	45	52	54
WPA2-AES	42	45	53	53
WPA3-SAE	45	42	53	53

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	62	70	123	90
WPA2-AES	61	65	117	90
WPA3-SAE	61	65	118	87

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	44	45	58	57
WPA2-AES	42	45	55	56
WPA3-SAE	43	45	57	56

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	75	85	118	100
WPA2-AES	77	68	118	100
WPA3-SAE	77	69	118	100

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p64.1 to 16.91.21.p82

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	WPA3-R3 enabled APUT beacons does not have RSNXE when configured in H2E mode

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p82 to 16.91.21.p91.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p91.6 to 16.91.21.p124

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Cloud keep alive packets not seen after DUT enters host sleep. DUT is sending QOS null packets even in host sleep

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p124 to 16.91.21.p133

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133 to 16.91.21.p133.2

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT STA getting rebooted after 15~20 iterations of 11R-Command based roaming0xa4 command timeout after several hours of stress test

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p133.2 to 16.91.21.p142.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	DUT fails to reconnect after the configured auto-reconnect time interval.
Coex	During HFP call, TX side noise is observed with coex CLI

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p142.5 to 16.91.21.p149.4

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.91.21.p149.4 to 16.92.21.p151.7

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Samsung S24 Ultra and Google Pixel 7 mobiles having Android 14 are not able connect to the DUTAP with WPA3 SAE security.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p151.7 to 16.92.21.p153.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The DUT encounters a command response timeout during the execution of the wlan-info command following UDP traffic tests.
Wi-Fi	Random hang issue seen when using wlan-p2p-find/stop in succession

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: From 16.92.21.p153.5 to 16.92.21.p153.6

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Coex	Wi-Fi connection in 2.4GHz is not stable, observed deauthentication within 10sec.

Parent topic:*IW416 release notes*

IW611/IW612 release notes **Note:** The IW611/IW612 support is enabled in i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC.

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW611/IW612
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.3.p27.10
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 3 - Release version
  - p27.10 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Host platform

- i.MX RT1170 EVKB and i.MX RT1060 EVKC Platforms running FreeRTOS
- Host interfaces
  - Wi-Fi over SDIO (SDIO 2.0 support, SDIO clock frequency: 50 MHz)
  - Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE over UART
  - 802.15.4 over SPI (IW612 only)
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD
- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *6*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW612 Murata (Module: 2EL M.2) with EVK-MIMXRT1060 EVKC platform
- DUT Power Source: External power supply
- Client: Apple MacBook Air
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_wpa_supplicant
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler Version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *2*

The throughput numbers are captured with default configurations using *wifi_wpa_supplicant* sample application.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput {#iperf_host_configuration_and_impact_on_throughpu

To get the highest throughput, the throughput values shown in STA throughput and Mobile AP throughput are measured with the maximum values of the default host configuration macros. STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros shows the throughput numbers obtained when using the minimum values of the host configuration macros. The macro values are defined in *lwipopts.h* file.

The table below lists the minimum and maximum values of the host configuration macros.

Values of the host configuration macros

Parameter	Maximum value	Minimum value
TCPIP_MBOX_SIZE	96	32
DEFAULT_RAW_RECVMBOX_SIZE	32	12
DEFAULT_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE	64	12
DEFAULT_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE	64	12
TCP_MSS	1460	536
TCP_SND_BUF	24 * TCP_MSS	2 * TCP_MSS
MEM_SIZE	319160	41,080
TCP_WND	15 * TCP_MSS	10 * TCP_MSS
MEMP_NUM_PBUF	20	10
MEMP_NUM_TCP_SEG	96	12
MEMP_NUM_TCPIP_MSG_INPKT	80	16
MEMP_NUM_TCPIP_MSG_API	80	8
MEMP_NUM_NETBUF	32	16

STA and AP throughput captured with the minimum values of the host configuration macros {#sta_and_ap_throughput_captured_with_the_minimum_values_of_the_host_configuration_macr

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	7	18	111	124
WPA2-AES	7	18	110	124
WPA3-SAE	6	18	110	124

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open Security	2	19	93	127
WPA2-AES	2	19	105	126
WPA3-SAE	2	19	104	132

Parent topic:iPerf host configuration and impact on throughput

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput

External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	52	51	64	63
WPA2-AES	51	50	62	62
WPA3-SAE	51	50	63	61

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	79	85	118	131
WPA2-AES	78	84	118	129
WPA3-SAE	78	83	118	130

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	50	52	63	64
WPA2-AES	49	51	63	63
WPA3-SAE	49	51	63	63

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	77	86	118	133
WPA2-AES	76	86	118	132
WPA3-SAE	79	86	118	132

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	56	59	76	76
WPA2-AES	56	59	74	75
WPA3-SAE	56	59	76	75

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	74	92	162	170
WPA2-AES	74	90	160	169
WPA3-SAE	71	91	161	171

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	57	76	78
WPA2-AES	42	57	75	77
WPA3-SAE	43	57	75	77

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	88	95	118	177
WPA2-AES	87	94	118	175
WPA3-SAE	91	94	118	175

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (VHT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	121	102	118	200
WPA2-AES	121	103	118	200
WPA3-SAE	121	103	118	200

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HE)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	78	64	117	105
WPA2-AES	78	67	117	104
WPA3-SAE	79	65	117	97

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HE)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	95	91	118	199
WPA2-AES	93	90	118	200
WPA3-SAE	91	87	118	199

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HE)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	76	66	118	127
WPA2-AES	75	68	118	125
WPA3-SAE	75	68	118	126

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz (HE)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	105	69	118	200
WPA2-AES	104	70	118	200
WPA3-SAE	104	70	118	200

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz (HE)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	125	73	118	200
WPA2-AES	123	76	118	200
WPA3-SAE	123	76	118	200

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput

External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	51	54	61	60
WPA2-AES	50	55	61	60
WPA3-SAE	51	54	61	60

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	85	107	118	124
WPA2-AES	86	101	118	126
WPA3-SAE	84	102	118	126

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	51	43	63	60
WPA2-AES	50	43	62	60
WPA3-SAE	50	43	63	60

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	89	115	118	128
WPA2-AES	88	110	118	128
WPA3-SAE	88	115	118	128

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	58	66	76	72
WPA2-AES	58	65	75	72
WPA3-SAE	58	65	75	72

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	103	141	135	168
WPA2-AES	102	134	137	167
WPA3-SAE	102	134	139	167

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	137	180	182	218
WPA2-AES	130	174	181	218
WPA3-SAE	136	175	182	218

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	53	66	85	120
WPA2-AES	52	65	83	116
WPA3-SAE	52	65	83	118

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	86	100	133	132
WPA2-AES	83	100	135	134
WPA3-SAE	86	100	136	134

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	65	82	83
WPA2-AES	58	65	82	82
WPA3-SAE	58	65	81	81

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 40 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	104	141	151	170
WPA2-AES	102	137	151	170
WPA3-SAE	103	136	150	170

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 80 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	138	180	189	219
WPA2-AES	135	175	190	218
WPA3-SAE	135	175	192	218

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

EU conformance tests

- EU Adaptivity test - EN 300 328 v2.1.1 (for 2.4 GHz)
- EU Adaptivity test - EN 301 893 v2.1.1 (for 5 GHz)

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p7.19 to 18.99.2.p49.9

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p49.9 to 18.99.2.p155

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Audio lost occurs due to periodic adv sync lost, during 2 BIS 44.1kHz unencrypted streams with 1M PHY configuration.BIS sync loss may occur in long audio streaming sessions.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p155 to 18.99.2.p66.30

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	802.11R Fast BSS roaming works only with hostapd and does not work with standard APs (supporting 11R)
Bluetooth	DUT is not able to sustain a connection with the remote device that does extended advertisement with coded PHY configuration. When 2 CIS streams are active, after the first device disconnects followed by the second device disconnecting, the second peripheral device hangs.Audio Play/Pause does not work in BIS case.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.2.p66.30 to 18.99.3.p10.5

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT not sending Neighbor Advertisement packet after receiving Neighbor Solicitation packet from Ex-AP.Antenna selection time exceeds configured evaluation time
Bluetooth	When DUT works as CIS source and CIS Offset is 612us, high packet drops observed which affects the audio streaming.For BIS Source Use Cases, Periodic Interval and ISO Interval should be multiple of each other value.In 1-CIS and 2-CIS, Continuous Audio Glitches are observed with 96 kbps bit rate.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p10.5 to 18.99.3.p17.9

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	After performing independent reset (out-of-band mode), the STAUT fails to connect to the external AP via wlan-connect command, observed command timeout 0x107 error.
Bluetooth	Audio glitches observed with Google Pixel 7 Pro streaming audio after CIS is established with DUT.During Call Gateway (CG) / Call Terminal (CT) Use Case, the firmware periodically sends NULL PDU, which results in frequent Audio Glitch on both CG and CT sides.Heavy audio glitches observed with CIS SRC Google Pixel 7 ProContinuous audio glitches observed in 1 CIS and 2 CIS for 48_3 and 48_4 config.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p17.9 to 18.99.3.p21.154

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	STAUT fail to ping AP backend machine when connected with DFS channel and DUTSTA went in bad state.
Bluetooth	CIS Sink frequently fails to acknowledge CIS Source TX PDU.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p21.154 to 18.99.3.p23.16

Component	Description
-	NA

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p23.16 to 18.99.3.p25.11

Component	Description
Bluetooth	Packet lost observed in CIS case, which causes audio noise.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p25.11 to 18.99.3.p26.10

Com-ponent	Description
Wi-Fi	During legacy roaming when the "Link Lost" observed the DUTSTA fails to roam
Wi-Fi	During the automated testing of the channel performance, a system hang can occur, with the error message ".sdio_drv_write failed".

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.3.p26.10 to 18.99.3.p27.1

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

Known issues

Com po-nent	Description
Blue tootl	Sequential Removal of CIS Handles as per current Controller implementation i.e CIS Dis-connection sequence should be in sequence => CIS - 4,3,2,1While 4-CIS streaming, audio glitches observed on all CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsWhile 4-CIS streaming, dis-connection with connection timeout observed on first CIS SINK with Samsung Galaxy budsOnly two streams (CIS/BIS) with one channel is supported.

Parent topic:*IW611/IW612 release notes*

RW610/RW612 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Version information

- Wi-Fi firmware version: 18.99.6.p50
  - rw61x_sb_wifi_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number
- Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.25.6.p50
  - rw61x_sb_ble_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 25 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number
- 802.15.4 and Bluetooth LE (up to core 4.1) firmware version: 18.34.6.p50
  - rw61x_sb_ble_15d4_combo_a2.bin for A2
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 34 - Feature pack
  - 6 - Release version
  - p50 - Patch number

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Host platform

- RW610/RW612 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Wireless certification The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

WFA certifications

- STA | 802.11n
- STA | PMF
- STA | FFD
- STA | SVD

- STA | WPA3 SAE (R3)
- STA | 802.11ac
- STA | 802.11ax
- STA | QTT

Refer to *1*.

Note: This release supports STAUT only certifications.

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Bluetooth LE controller certification QDID: Refer to *4*.

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Thread Thread group: refer to *7*.

Product Name: NXP RW612 Wireless MCU with Integrated Tri-Radio

Thread version: V1.3.0

CID #: 13A109

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Matter RW612 certification: refer to *8*.

Certificate ID: CSA23C36MAT41746-24

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi

RW610 certification: refer to *9*.

Certificate ID: CSA23C43MAT41753-50

Device type: Root Node, Thermostat

Transport: Matter over Wi-Fi and Matter over Thread

Parent topic: Wireless certification

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: RW610/RW612
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2

- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *3*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	38	62	62
WPA2-AES	37	37	61	63
WPA3-SAE	37	37	60	61

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	64	64
WPA2-AES	37	38	62	64
WPA3-SAE	39	38	62	64

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	41	75	74
WPA2-AES	41	41	73	74
WPA3-SAE	40	41	72	73

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	42	76	76
WPA2-AES	42	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	42	41	75	74

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	45	97	99
WPA2-AES	43	44	96	98
WPA3-SAE	42	44	97	98

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	47	47	100	103
WPA2-AES	45	46	100	101
WPA3-SAE	47	46	100	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput

External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	39	39	62	62
WPA2-AES	39	39	61	61
WPA3-SAE	38	39	61	61

Mobile AP throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	40	40	63	63
WPA2-AES	39	39	62	61
WPA3-SAE	39	39	62	61

Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	43	43	73	73
WPA2-AES	43	42	72	72
WPA3-SAE	43	42	73	72

Mobile AP throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	44	44	74	74
WPA2-AES	43	43	74	74
WPA3-SAE	43	43	74	74

Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	48	48	95	96
WPA2-AES	47	47	98	95
WPA3-SAE	47	47	97	95

Mobile AP throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	49	49	96	97
WPA2-AES	48	48	101	97
WPA3-SAE	48	48	101	97

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p34 to 18.99.6.p40

Component	Description
Zigbee	Zigbee Coordinator and Router are disconnected during BLE connection pairing and bonding with a mobile app for the first time.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p40 to 18.99.6.p46

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Fails to establish a persistent connection when the device attempts to reinvoke the second stored Persistent Group
Bluetooth	NCP cannot work after flash uart bins for both host and device side

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.6.p46 to 18.99.6.p47

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	—
Bluetooth LE	—
Zigbee	-
Coex	-

Parent topic:*RW610/RW612 release notes*

IW610 release notes

Package information

- SDK version: 25.12.00

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Version information

- Wireless SoC: IW610
- Wi-Fi and Bluetooth/Bluetooth LE firmware version: 18.99.5.p86
  - 18 - Major revision
  - 99 - Feature pack
  - 5 - Release version
  - p86 - Patch number

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Host platform

- IW610 platform running FreeRTOS
- Test tools
  - iPerf (version 2.1.9)

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

The Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification is obtained with the following combinations.

Bluetooth controller certification

QDID: Refer to *4*.

Note: QDID upgrade to Bluetooth Core Specification Version 5.4 is in progress.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi and Bluetooth certification

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Wi-Fi throughput

Throughput test setup

- Environment: Shield Room - Over the Air
- Access Point: Asus AX88u
- DUT: IW610
- External Client: Intel AX210
- Channel: 6 | 36
- Wi-Fi application: wifi_cli
- Compiler used to build application: armgcc
- Compiler version gcc-arm-none-eabi-13.2
- iPerf commands used in test:

TCP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60
```

TCP RX

```
iperf -s
```

UDP TX

```
iperf -c <remote_ip> -t 60 -u -B <local_ip> -b 120
```

Note: The default rate is 100 Mbps.

UDP RX

```
iperf -s -u -B <local_ip>
```

Note: Read more about the throughput test setup and topology in *3*.

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

STA throughput

External AP: Asus AX88u

STA mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	37	37	60	62
WPA2-AES	36	37	59	61
WPA3-SAE	36	37	59	61

STA mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	35	40	64	65
WPA2-AES	34	39	62	64
WPA3-SAE	35	39	77	76

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz (HT)

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	41	40	72	72
WPA2-AES	40	40	72	72
WPA3-SAE	40	40	72	71

STA mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	38	42	77	76
WPA2-AES	37	41	75	75
WPA3-SAE	37	40	75	75

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	45	44	93	96
WPA2-AES	43	43	93	95
WPA3-SAE	44	43	93	96

STA mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
OpenSecurity	42	46	94	100
WPA2-AES	42	45	94	101
WPA3-SAE	41	45	94	101

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Mobile AP throughput External client: Apple MacBook Air

Mobile AP mode throughput - BGN Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	48	44	61	61
WPA2-AES	47	43	59	59
WPA3-SAE	47	43	59	59

Mobile AP mode throughput - AN Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	49	46	64	63
WPA2-AES	48	45	62	61
WPA3-SAE	48	45	62	61

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	50	73	73
WPA2-AES	53	49	73	72
WPA3-SAE	52	49	73	72

Mobile AP mode throughput - VHT Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	54	51	71	70
WPA2-AES	53	50	71	70
WPA3-SAE	52	50	71	70

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 2.4 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	59	56	93	90
WPA2-AES	57	53	94	84
WPA3-SAE	57	53	94	84

Mobile AP mode throughput - HE Mode | 5 GHz Band | 20 MHz

Protocol	TCP (Mbit/s)	TCP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)	UDP (Mbit/s)
Direction	TX	RX	TX	RX
Open security	61	58	96	91
WPA2-AES	59	56	98	85
WPA3-SAE	59	55	98	85

Parent topic: Wi-Fi throughput

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.5.p66 to 18.99.5.p76

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	The P2P client connection fails when an attempt is made to connect after the P2P Group Owner (P2P-GO) has been stopped.

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Firmware version: 18.99.5.p76 to 18.99.5.p79

Component	Description
Wi-Fi	Enabled mbedtls 3.x

Parent topic: Bug fixes and/or feature enhancements

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Known issues

Component	Description
NA	

Parent topic:*IW610 release notes*

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
A2DP	Advanced audio distribution profile
AMPDU	Aggregated MAC protocol data unit
AMSDU	Aggregated MAC service data unit
AP	Access point
BW	Bandwidth
CCMP	Counter mode CBC-MAC protocol
CSI	Channel state information
CTS	Clear To Send
DL	Down link
EDCA	Enhanced distributed channel access
ER	Extended range
ERP	Extended rate physical
GATT	Generic attribute profile
HFP	Hands free profile
HID	Human interface device
HT	High throughput
LDPC	Low density parity check
MCS	Modulation and coding scheme
MLME	Mac layer management entity
OMI	Operating mode indication
PMF	Protected management frames
RTS	Request to send
SAE	Simultaneous authentication of equals
STA	Station

continues on next page

Table 4 – continued from previous page

Abbreviation	Definition
TWT	Target wake time
UL	Up link
VHT	Very high throughput
WEP	Wired equivalent private
WFD	Wi-Fi direct
WMM	Wireless multi-media
WPA	Wi-Fi protected access
WPS	Wi-Fi protected setup
WSC	Wi-Fi Simple Configuration

References

1. Application note - AN13681 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
2. User manual – UM11442 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for i.MX RT Platforms (available in the SDK package)
3. User manual – UM11799 - NXP Wi-Fi and Bluetooth Demo Applications User Guide for RW61x (available in the SDK package)
4. Certification – Bluetooth controller - QDID (*link*)
5. User manual - UM12133 - NXP NCP Application Guide for RW612 with MCU Host
6. Technical note - TN00066 – Wi-Fi Alliance (WFA) Derivative Certification Process (available in the SDK package)
7. Web page – Thread certified products (link)
8. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW612 Tri-Radio Wireless MCU Development Platform (link)
9. Web page – Connectivity standard alliance (csa) – NXP RW610 Wireless MCU Development Platform (link)
10. Application note - AN14634 – Kconfig Memory Optimizer (link)

Chapter 2

RTOS

2.1 FreeRTOS

2.1.1 FreeRTOS kernel

Open source RTOS kernel for small devices.

FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK Readme

FreeRTOS kernel for MCUXpresso SDK ChangeLog

FreeRTOS kernel Readme

2.1.2 FreeRTOS drivers

This is set of NXP provided FreeRTOS reentrant bus drivers.

2.1.3 backoffalgorithm

Algorithm for calculating exponential backoff with jitter for network retry attempts.

Readme

2.1.4 corehttp

C language HTTP client library designed for embedded platforms.

2.1.5 corejson

JSON parser.

Readme

2.1.6 coremqtt

MQTT publish/subscribe messaging library.

2.1.7 corepkcs11

PKCS #11 key management library.

Readme

2.1.8 freertos-plus-tcp

Open source RTOS FreeRTOS Plus TCP.

Readme